What Must Be Known About Islam
Maktaba Dar-us-Salam, 2002

King Fahd National Library Cataloging-in-Publication Data
Al-Arfaj, Muhammad bin Ali
What must be known about Islam. - Riyadh, 2002
311 p.; 14x21 cm
1- Islam - General principles 1- Title
210 dc 1423/4715
Legal Deposit no. 1423/4715
What Must Be Known About Islam

Compiled by
Muhammad bin ‘Ali Al-Arfaj

Translated by
Darussalam

DARUSSALAM
GLOBAL LEADER IN ISLAMIC BOOKS
Riyadh, Jeddah, Sharjah, Lahore
London, Houston, New York
## Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Completeness Of The <em>Shari'ah</em></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Four Issues</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Three Foundations A Muslim Must Know And Apply</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Different Levels In The Religion Of Islam: Islam, <em>Iman</em> and <em>Ihsan</em></td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>The First Pillar: The Two Testimonies</strong></td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Worship (<em>Ibadah</em>)</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Existence Of Allah</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tawhid And Its Categories</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Virtue Of Tawhid</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shirk And Its Categories</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protecting The Belief In Tawhid</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exaggerating Over the Righteous People</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>The Second Pillar: Prayer</strong></td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Prescribed Prayers And The Number Of Their Units</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Rulings For Congregational Prayer And For The <em>Imam</em></td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The <em>Athan</em> and <em>Iqama</em></td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Al Jumu'ah</em> (The Friday) Prayer</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miscellaneous Prayers</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Rulings For Funerals</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>The Third Pillar: <em>Zakat</em> (Compulsory Charity)</strong></td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Categories Of Wealth In Which <em>Zakat</em> Is Obligatory</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The <em>Zakat</em> Of Camels</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>The Fourth Pillar: Fasting</strong></td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Zakatul Fitr</em></td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
What Must Be Known About Islam

The Fifth Pillar: Ḥaḍāj
(First, The 'Umrab) .................................................. 154
(Second, The Ḥaḍāj) .................................................. 158
The Deeds Of Ḥaḍāj .................................................. 160
This Is How The Messenger Of Allah ﷺ Performed Ḥaḍāj .................................................. 164
A Benefit ........................................................................ 179
The Noble Qur'ān .................................................. 187
The Tafsir (Explanation) Of Certain Chapters Of The Qur'ān .................................................. 193
Surat Al-Fatihah .................................................. 193
Surat An-Nas .................................................. 198
Surat Al-Falaq .................................................. 199
Surat Al-Ikhlās .................................................. 201
Surat An-Nasr .................................................. 203
Surat Al-Kāfirūn .................................................. 204
Surat Al-Kawthar .................................................. 205
Surat Al-‘Asr .................................................. 207
Surat Al-Bayyīnab .................................................. 208
Surat Al-Qādir .................................................. 212
The Sunnah .................................................. 214
Selected Invocations For The Young And Old .................................................. 217
Supplications Of The Muslim During The Day And Night .................................................. 220
The Prophet's Biography And His Manners .................................................. 231
Islamic Manners And Characteristics .................................................. 244
The Lawful .................................................. 254
The Youth And Islamic Manners .................................................. 256
Certain Forbidden Deeds .................................................. 266
Marriage: Its Fruits And Benefits For The Short And Long Term

Dedication .................................................................................................................. 284
Some Factors That Contribute To The Growth Of The Muslim Family .............................. 285
How Islam Wants A Woman To Be .............................................................................. 287
The Wisdom Behind Marriage And Its Benefits ......................................................... 288
The Wisdom Behind A Man Being Allowed To Have More Than One Wife In Islam ...................... 291
The Dangers Of Turning Away From Marriage: On The Individual And On Society ................ 293
Why Young Men And Women Turn Away From Marriage .............................................. 294
Guidance And Advice ................................................................................................. 297
Advice That Should Be Read ......................................................................................... 299
Certain Marital Rights ................................................................................................. 300
Finally, A Call To Early Marriage ................................................................................ 303
Certain Rulings Related To Menstruation And Postnatal Bleeding ................................. 304
Important Points .......................................................................................................... 307
Conclusion: A Call To Guiding People To The Truth ..................................................... 309
Introduction

Indeed, all praise is for Allâh: we praise Him, repent to Him, and seek His forgiveness and help. We seek refuge in Allâh from the evil of our selves and of our wicked deeds. Whomsoever Allâh guides, none can lead astray; and whomsoever Allâh leaves astray, none can guide. And I bear witness that none has the right to be worshipped except Allâh alone, and He has no partner; and I bear witness that our Prophet Muhammad is His servant and Messenger. O Allâh, send many blessings and salutations upon him, his family, and his Companions until the Day of Judgement.

O you who believe! Fear Allâh as He should be feared, and die not except as Muslims.\(^1\)

O mankind be dutiful to your Lord, Who created you from a single person, and from him He created his wife, and from them both He created many men and women; and fear Allâh through Whom you demand your mutual (rights), and (do not cut the relations of) the wombs (kinship). Surely, Allâh is Ever and All-Watcher over you.\(^2\)

O you who believe! Keep your duty to Allâh and fear Him, and speak (always) the truth. He will direct you to do righteous good deeds and will forgive you your sins. And whosoever

---

\(^1\) (Aal ‘Imran 3: 102)
\(^2\) (An-Nisa’ 4:1)
obeys Allāh and His Messenger, he has indeed achieved a great achievement.[1]

In these times, there is an urgent need to educate people regarding the affairs of their religion in simple and clear language, so that they can worship Allāh sincerely, in accordance to what Allāh legislated in His Book and to what the Prophet ﷺ pronounced with his tongue. This need is especially felt among the common man and those who are new adherents to the religion of Islam. Islam must be presented in an easy and plain manner so that people can enter into Islam in flocks, and so that we can all be blessed with those words that the Prophet ﷺ said to ‘Ali, may Allāh be pleased with him:

«لَوْ نَهَدَيْنَاهُ اللَّهُ يَكُونُ رَجُلًا وَاحِدًا حَيْثُ لَكَ مِنْ حُمْرِ الْعَمَّ»

“For Allāh to guide one man through you is better for you than red camels.”[2]

And he ﷺ also said:

«خَيْبَةُ النَّاسِ أَثَّنَعُهُمْ إِلَى النَّاسِ»

“The best of people is the one who benefits people most.”[3]

Beneficial knowledge and righteous deeds; indeed these are the keys of success and the basis for safety in this life as well as in the next. When Allāh guides a person to both beneficial knowledge and righteous deeds, then that person has achieved happiness in both abodes. And then, if he completes those blessings by spreading knowledge, disseminating it among the people, then the meanings of righteousness and piety are complete in him, and he becomes like good rain: wherever it falls, it benefits. This was the way that the

[1] (Al-Ahzab 33:70, 71)
[2] Prime possessions at the time. It is an agreed upon narration; recorded by Al-Bukhari and Muslim.
[3] Al-Qudha’i in Musnad Ab-Shibab (2:23), and it was to him that As-Suyuti ascribed it in Al-Jami’, As-Saghir (2:9) and As-Suyuti put an abbreviation indicating it to be Hasan. It is also recorded by At-Tabarani in Al-Awsat (6:368).

It is also in Mejma’ Al-Babrain (1:131,132) and Al-Qudha’i related it in Musnad Ab-Shibab (1:108). Al-Albani mentioned the Hadith in As-Sahihah and said, “Indeed the Hadith is Hasan.” Refer to As-Sahihah no. 426
Introduction

righteous scholars of every era and region lived.

A group of students of knowledge — may Allâh Almighty reward them well — have resolved to put together this book, which contains that which a Muslim must know, presented in clear and plain words; it consists of a summary of many topics, such as 'Aqeedah (beliefs), acts of worship, and manners. By perusing this book, the reader can gain a clear, yet basic, picture of Islam; for a Muslim reader, it may serve as a first source of reference for Islamic rulings, laws, prohibitions, and manners. It is hoped that this book will reach those who call to Islam in different lands, who can translate it into all languages — so that through it, those whom Allâh Almighty wills may be guided to the truth; and so that the proof will be established upon those who reject this message after it reaches them. It is hoped that this book will serve as a key to goodness, and as guidance to people in different lands; and it is further hoped that those who participated in putting this book together will achieve reward and success.

And in conclusion to this introduction, it does not escape me to thank all those who helped or contributed to the release of this book — eminent scholars and students of knowledge alike, for they spared no effort until, in the end, this book has now — and all praise is for Allâh — entered the realm of existence.

May Allâh Almighty grant success to all of His believing worshippers in the different lands, and we ask Him to grant us understanding in the religion and steadfastness upon it, as well as sincerity in speech and deed. Indeed He is able to answer our prayers. And our last request is: all the praise is due to Allâh, the Lord of all that exists. O Allâh, send blessings and salutations upon our Prophet Muhammad, his family, and all of his Companions.

Written by one who is in dire need of his Lord’s forgiveness,

Muhammad bin ‘Ali Al-‘Arfaj

May Allâh Almighty forgive him, his parents, and all Muslims
The Completeness Of The Shari‘ah

1) It is clear that Allâh Almighty sent His Prophet Muhammad (ш) to mankind as a mercy from Him and as a favor — to take them out of the levels of darkness and to bring them into the light — by His permission — and to guide them to the straight path.

2) Before the advent of the Prophet (ш), the Arabs were in a state of ignorance and misery, for they worshipped idols, buried young girls alive, shed blood for the most trifling reasons, and often times, for no reason at all. Their lives were constrained and limited; they sought judgement in their affairs with fortunetellers and false deities.

3) Then Allâh Almighty sent our noble Prophet (ш), and through him, Allâh removed them from the layers of darkness and brought them into the light — removed them from the darkness of disbelief and polytheism and brought them into the light of faith and Tawhid, from the darkness of ignorance and thoughtlessness to the light of knowledge and forbearance, from the darkness of oppression and injustice to the light of justice and benefaction, from the darkness of disunity and discord to the light of harmony and agreement, from the darkness of selfishness and despotism to the light of humbleness and mutual counsel, and from the darkness of poverty and tension to the light of richness and well being. Indeed, Allâh Almighty removed them from the darkness of death — for they were nothing more than the walking dead — to the light of a happy life:

إِنْ بَلَّاءَ الْحَقِّ هُوَ الْحَقُّ وَيَكْفِرُ النَّاسَ عَنْ أَشْعَالِهِ وَيَبْعَثُهُمْ لِيَدْرِسُوا وَيَكْثِبُهُمْ لِيُجْعَلَهُمْ جُنُودًا إِنَّهُمْ كَانُوا مِنْ يَوْمٍ كَانُوا مِنْهُ بَيْضًا

Is he who was dead (without faith by ignorance and disbelief) and We gave him life (by knowledge and faith) and set for him a light (of belief) whereby he can walk among men, like him who is in the darkness (of disbelief, polytheism and hypocrisy) from which he can never come out? Thus it is made fair
seeming to the disbelievers that which they used to do.\[1\]

Through the Prophet Ṭ, Allāh Almighty completed the religion and completed all good and lofty manners in man. The Prophet Ṭ ordered the people to worship none but Allāh alone, without associating partners with Him, and he ordered them to be dutiful to their parents, to join ties with relations, and to show generosity to the poor and needy. The Prophet Ṭ said:

\begin{quote}
إِنَّ اللَّهَ كَتَبَ الإِخْسَانَ عَلَى كُلِّ شَيْءٍ
\end{quote}

Indeed Allāh has written Ihsan (doing good deeds and doing them in a good way) upon all things.\[2\]

Regarding matters that they disagreed about, the Prophet Ṭ ordered them to seek judgement with Allāh Almighty and His Messenger Ṭ.

The more knowledge one gains about Islam, the more will he honor and revere it, which is why the Companions — who had a more complete knowledge of the religion — adhered better to its teachings, from its major aspects to its more minor of details. It is most strange today to find that the majority of people have turned away from the teachings of Islam (which is complete), opting to replace them with man-made laws, laws that are clearly contradictory, laws that not only allow injustice, but legislate it as well. And that is why those laws are constantly changing: each new person that comes thinks that his view of justice and order is better than the views of those who preceded him; and so the process continues as long as laws are derived from the weakness and foolishness of weak minds.

The Islamic Shariʿah, on the other hand, is applicable and suitable for all times and places: fourteen hundred years have passed, yet because of its completeness, Islam establishes rights for all areas and levels in society. Anyone who is just — even if he is from the opponents of Islam — must see that Islam provides a peaceful, safe, and comfortable life for its adherents in this life, with laws that are applicable and suitable to individuals, societies, and governments.

Much have we heard and read that attests to this, for some of the Orientalists who write to establish the truth and not to pursue

\[1\] (Al-An'am 6:122)
\[2\] Muslim (2:1548), in a Hadīth related by Shaddad bin Aws.
political objectives admit that the development of modern Europe stemmed from the light of Islam in Spain and from the books that they stole from Muslims during their wars with them in the East and West.

Taylor, a priest, said, “Indeed Islam spread throughout Africa and wherever it spread, virtues spread with it. Generosity, virtue, and mutual support are from its influences while bravery and courage are from its results.”

Kuntainz said, “Muslims are distinguished from others by the noble characteristics and lofty manners that the admonitions of the Qurʾān have stamped onto their souls and onto the souls of their parents; others, on the other hand, are bereft of all of that.” He also said, “From the greatest of qualities that a Muslim is distinguished by is his self-dignity; in times of hardship and of ease, he sees that honor and dignity are only for Allāh, His Messenger, and for himself.”

Hanotaux, the Foreign Minister of France in his time, said, “This religion of Islam stands on strong pillars and supports; it is the only religion that allows for throngs and flocks of people to enter it. The strong inclination of people to adhere to the religion of Islam is stronger than other such inclinations in any other religion. Indeed Islam has crossed the threshold of every populated region and has spread throughout the lands.”

This is what some of the Orientalists have to say about Muslims:

As soon as Muslims turned away from the teachings of their religion, becoming ignorant of its rulings, and choosing, instead, contradictory laws made by men, corruption spread among their ranks; prevarication, hypocrisy, mutual hatred toward one another became rampant. They lost their unity and became ignorant about their present and future situation. They became heedless of what benefits them and what harms them, and they became satisfied with the life of merely eating, drinking, and sleeping. And so now, they do not compete with others in the pursuit of virtue and superiority. Yet when one of them is able to harm his brother, he is not negligent in inflicting that harm.

Many Orientalists have spoken much to this effect: that Islam is all-embracing and comprehensive in providing benefits for its
adherents and in warding off evil, and that were the Muslims to truly adhere to their religion, they would be the most advanced nation with the happiest adherents; however, because they wasted, they have become lost, and they are satisfied with merely having Muslim names.

We do not, however — and all praise is for Allâh — need their testimony to establish the greatness of Islam. We merely mention their testimonies because the adherents of Islam are weak in their understanding and application of their religion, and because some of the enemies of Islam have grasped that which the Muslims do not perceive. While some of those enemies extol the completeness of Islam, Muslims have turned to systems and laws that are contradictory in their very nature. Without a doubt the true religion that guarantees to provide for the needs of all of mankind is Islam: the religion of true loftiness, of true justice, of civilization and freedom in its truest sense, of action, of mutual love and cooperation, of knowledge, and of encouragement to all noble professions and trades. Islam is not limited to rulings about worship and dealings; it embraces all aspects of life, all matters that can benefit mankind, and it is suitable for every place and time until the Day of Judgement.

It is sad to note that Muslims are ignorant of the truth they have with them; many Muslims, unfortunately, have turned against their own religion, attacking it at every turn, and many have come to prefer the people of the west to Muslims. Such people think that it is religion that has caused them to fall behind — how wrong they are! They have caused themselves to fall behind only by neglecting the teachings of their religion. Satisfied with laziness and ignorance, they live in a state of confusion.

From the greatest ways of deviation is to claim that the laws of Islam do not provide for the needs of all, and that people need laws derived from other sources to govern their daily problems; how can a Muslim make such a claim! And does not such a claim suggest disbelief in this verse:

```
الَّذِينَ آمَنُواَ وَعَامَلُواَ الصَّالِحَاتِ وَعَمِلُواَ الصَّالِحَاتِ عَلَىٰ عَيْنِيٍّ وَرَضِيتُ لَكُمُ الْإِلَيْهِمْ وَبَنَيْتُ
```

This day, I have perfected your religion for you, completed My favor upon you, and have chosen for you Islam as your
Indeed, Islam is most complete! Whoever reflects on its completeness will find no word that is suitable to describe its perfection and completion: for they are realities that man’s words cannot put shape to. If mankind, including the most genius of men, were to gather and work together, they could not come up with a system even close to the perfect system of Islam. Enough for a genius is to recognize and acknowledge the perfection and greatness of Islam. Indeed, Islam is the greatest favor that Allâh Almighty blessed His worshippers with, for can there be a greater favor than guiding someone to Islam and making him from among its adherents. That is why Allâh Almighty reminded us of that favor, saying:

\[
\text{"Indeed Allâh conferred a great favor on the believers when He sent among them a Messenger from among themselves, reciting to them His verses (the Qur'an), and purifying them, and instructing them (in) the Book (the Qur'an) and Al-Hikmah (the wisdom and the Sunnah), while before that they had been in manifest error."}^{[2]}
\]

Reminding His creatures of His great favor upon them, and of their responsibility of being thankful for that favor, Allâh Almighty says:

\[
\text{"This day, I have perfected your religion for you, completed My favor upon you, and have chosen for you Islam as your religion."}^{[3]}
\]

Some of our pious predecessors used to say, “What a great religion it is indeed; all it needs are men that adhere to it.”^{[4]}

---

[^1]: (Al-Ma'idah 5:3)
[^2]: (Aal 'Imran 3:164)
[^3]: (Al-Ma'idah 5:3)
[^4]: This section was taken with minor editing from Risalab Kamalush-Shari'ah by Shaikh 'Abdullah bin Humaid.
The Four Issues[1]

Know, may Allah have mercy on you, that it is incumbent upon us to learn four issues:

1) Knowledge: Knowledge of Allah Almighty, His Prophet ﷺ, and the religion of Islam, through revealed sources.
2) Action that is based on that knowledge.
3) Calling others to that knowledge and to its application.
4) Patience when treading that path — i.e., the path of knowledge, of action, and of calling others to both.

The proof for these issues is found in this Chapter of the Qur’ân:

By Al-‘Asr (the time). Verily! Man is in loss, except those who believe and do righteous good deeds, and recommend one another to the truth, and recommend one another to patience.[2]

Ash-Shafi’i — may Allah have mercy on him — said, “Had Allah revealed this Surah alone as a proof upon His creation, it would be enough for them.”

Al-Bukhari — may Allah have mercy upon him — gave this heading to one of the chapters of his compilation: Knowledge before speech and action.[3] The proof for that is in this verse:

So know that Laa Illaha Illallâh (none has the right to be worshipped but Allah), and ask forgiveness for your sin.[4]

---

[1] See Thalathah Al-Usul by Shaikh Muhammad bin ‘Abdul-Wahhab, may Allah have mercy upon him.
[4] (Muhammad 47:19)
In this verse, Allâh Almighty refers to knowledge before speech and deed. Know (may Allâh Almighty have mercy on you) that there are three issues that all Muslims, both male and female, must learn and apply:

1) Allâh Almighty created us and provided for us, and He did not leave us to wander aimlessly. He sent us a Messenger \( \text{ﷺ} \) who ever follows and obeys him enters Paradise, and whoever disobeys him enters the Hellfire, for Allâh Almighty says:

\[ \text{Verily, We have sent to you (O men)} \text{ﷺ a Messenger to be a witness over you, as We did send a Messenger to Fir'awn. But Fir'awn disobeyed the Messenger, so We seized him with a severe punishment.} \]

[1]

2) Allâh Almighty is not pleased when others besides Him are worshipped or when others are associated with Him in worship—regardless of whether it is a high-ranking angel or a sent Prophet. Allâh Almighty says:

\[ \text{And the Mosjids are for Allâh, so invoke not anyone along with Allâh.} \]

[2]

3) Whoever obeys the Messenger of Allâh \( \text{ﷺ} \) and believes and applies Taawîd, he is forbidden from taking the enemies of Allâh Almighty and His Messenger \( \text{ﷺ} \) as friends, guardians, or protectors, even if they are the closest of relatives. Allâh Almighty says:

[1] (Al-Muzzammil 73:15,16)
You will not find any people who believe in Allâh and the Last Day, making friendship with those who oppose Allâh and His Messenger, even though they were their fathers, or their sons, or their brothers, or their kindred (people). For such He has written faith in their hearts, and strengthened them with *Rub* (proofs, light and true guidance) from Himself. And We will admit them to Gardens (Paradise) under which rivers flow, to dwell therein (forever). Allâh is pleased with them, and they with Him. They are the party of Allâh. Verily, it is the party of Allâh that will be the successful.\(^1\)

\(^1\) (*Al-Mu'adhab* 58:22)
The Three Foundations
A Muslim Must Know And Apply

1) Knowledge of his Lord: And He is Allâh Almighty, Who created His worshipper from nothing, and bestowed upon him all kinds of blessings. Allâh Almighty is the Creator of the heavens and earth, of night and day, of the sun and moon. It is He Who sends down rain and causes vegetation to grow and provides for His creatures. And it is He alone Who deserves to be worshipped.

2) Knowledge of His religion, which is Islam: Allâh Almighty says:

\[
\text{"إِنَّ الْوَلَّٰدَ عَنْ ذِٰلِكَ أَنَّهُ أَسْلَمٌ"}
\]

Truly, the religion with Allâh is Islam.[1]

3) Knowledge of His Prophet, Muhammad ﷺ: He is Muhammad bin (the son of) ‘Abdullah bin ‘Abdul-Muttallib bin Hashim. Hashim was from the Quraish and the Quraish are from the Arabs. And Muhammad ﷺ was the final and best Prophet.

The Different Levels In The Religion Of Islam: Islam, Iman and Ihsan

Islam

Islam means to surrender to Allâh with Taubid, to submit to Him with obedience and purity from Shirk (associating partners with Allâh) and from its adherents. For one to be Muslim, one must have the following three:

1) He believes that Allâh is the One, and that He has no partner and that none has the right to be worshipped except Him.

2) He submits to Allâh Almighty with obedience to Him; he executes those orders that the Messenger of Allâh, Muhammad ﷺ, came with, meaning that he believes him in what he says, obeys him in what he commands, and stays away from that which he forbids — as Allâh Almighty says:

\[1\] (Aal ‘Imran 3:19)
And whatsoever the Messenger gives you, take it, and whatsoever he forbids you, abstain (from it).\[^{[1]}\]

3) He purifies his heart from all forms and kinds of Shirk. One becomes a Muslim when he utters the two testimonies of faith, and when he applies the rest of the pillars of Islam.

**The Pillars Of Islam Are Five**

1) To bear witness that none has the right to be worshipped except Allah and that Muhammad is the Messenger of Allah.
2) To establish the prayer (Salat).
3) To give Zakat (the obligatory charity).
4) To fast the month of Ramadhan.
5) To make pilgrimage (Hijj) to the Sacred House (Ka'bah), for whoever is able to do so.

**The First Pillar: The Two Testimonies**

**The Meaning Of The Two Testimonies**

1) *Laa Ilab a Illallâh*: “None has the right to be worshipped” negates all that is worshipped other than Allah, and “except Allah” establishes that worship is for Allah alone and that He has no partner in worship, just as He has no partner in His dominion. Hence there is none that deserves to be worshipped except Allah - and how perfect is He!

2) “And that Muhammad is the Messenger of Allah”: i.e., I believe that he is the Messenger of Allah, and so I obey him in what he commands, believe him in what he informs, and abstain from that which he prohibits or warns against; and I worship Allah only according to the way that he legislated.

**Iman (Faith)**

*Iman*, upon which success in this world and the next depends, is composed of the following three elements:

\[^{[1]}\] (Al-Hashr 59:7)
1) Acknowledgement with one’s tongue.
2) Faith in one’s heart.
3) And action with one’s limbs.

Iman increases with obedience, decreases with disobedience. One must have in him the preceding three elements for him to be a believer (Mu’min). But what do those elements mean?

**Acknowledgement With One’s Tongue**

This means that one acknowledges with his tongue and bears witness to the fact that none has the right to be worshipped except Allâh and that Muhammad is the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ.

**Faith In One’s Heart**

This means that one believes with his heart in that which he uttered with his tongue, so that he is saved from being among the hypocrites, about whom Allâh Almighty says:

وَمِنْ آلِ أَبِي عَلِيٍّ آمَنَةٌ بِاللَّهِ وَبِالْيَوْمِ الْآخِرِ وَمَا هُمْ يَهْتِمُونَ

And of mankind, there are some who say: “We believe in Allâh and the Last Day” while in fact they believe not.[1]

**Action With One’s Limbs**

This means to apply the pillars of Islam and its obligatory duties — prayer, Zakat, fasting Ramadhan, Hajj to Allâh’s Sacred House (i.e., Ka’bah), for whoever is able to do so. From the completeness of action is for one to be dutiful to his parents, to join ties with relations, to be kind and generous to the creation, for all of these are proofs that establish the veracity of the Iman in his heart.

Iman, then, is not merely a word that is uttered by the tongue; moreover, the heart must believe it and then action must follow. It has been related that Al-Hasan Al-Basri said, “Iman does not come with adornment or wishful thinking, but it is something that settles in the heart and is witnessed by action.”

[1] (Al-Baqarah 2:8)
The Pillars Of Iman Are Six

1) Belief in Allâh.
2) Belief in the angels.
3) Belief in the Divine Books that Allâh revealed to His Messengers.
4) Belief in all of the Messengers.
5) Belief in the Last Day, when Allâh will resurrect all of creation from their graves and then judge them for their deeds. Allâh Almighty says:

\[
\text{۳۴۷۰۷} \text{۳۴۰۷} \text{۳۴۰۷} \text{۳۴۰۷} \text{۳۴۰۷} \text{۳۴۰۷} \text{۳۴۰۷} \text{۳۴۰۷} \text{۳۴۰۷} \text{۳۴۰۷}
\]

So, whosoever does good equal to the weight of an atom (or a small ant), shall see it. And whosoever does evil equal to the weight of an atom (or a small ant), shall see it.[1]

6) Belief in Al-Qadar (Divine Preordainment) — both the good and bad of it, the sweet and bitter of it. This means that the Muslim believes that, before Allâh created the creation, He had knowledge of all that was to occur; he believes that whatever Allâh wills happens and that Allâh has complete power; and he believes that only that which Allâh wills takes place in the universe: what He wills happens, what He doesn’t will, doesn’t happen. When one of Allâh’s worshippers has Iman in Al-Qadar, he is greatly influenced in many ways — for example, the following:

i) He has patience when faced with hardship:

\[
\text{۳۴۰۷} \text{۳۴۰۷} \text{۳۴۰۷} \text{۳۴۰۷} \text{۳۴۰۷} \text{۳۴۰۷} \text{۳۴۰۷} \text{۳۴۰۷} \text{۳۴۰۷} \text{۳۴۰۷}
\]

No calamity befalls on the earth or in yourselves but is inscribed in the Book of Decrees (Al-Lawh Al-Malîk), before We bring it into existence. Verily, that is easy for Allâh.[2]

ii) He is satisfied and calm because he knows that Allâh decreed his provision, his life span, and all of the matters that he

---

[1] \((\text{Az-Zalzalah 99:7, 8})\)

[2] \((\text{Al-Hadid 57:22})\)
wants and achieves. The Prophet ﷺ said:

" ningún, el rey, que le haga su voluntad: escriba, y rechace, y alabéelo y en verdad...

Then He sends the angel who blows into him the Ruh (spirit). And He orders him (the angel) to write four matters: his provision, his (time of) death, his deeds...[1]

And the proof for the six pillars is this verse:

" دَعُوَّوهُ الَّذِّي يَقْتُلُ الْأَبْنَاءَ مِنَ الْأَشْرَافِ وَيَذْهَبْ وَيَقْتُلُهُمْ مِنَ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ وَلْيَكْتُبَ مَنْ أَمَنَهُ يَوْمَ الْيَمِينَ وَأَيْدِيهِمْ وَالْقِهْقَةَ وَالْجُنُوبَیْنَ".

It is not Al-Birr (piety, righteousness) that you turn your faces towards the east and (or) the west (in prayers); but Al-Birr is (the quality of) the one who believes in Allāh, the Last Day, the Angels, the Book, the Prophets...[2]

And the proof for Al-Qadar is the following verse:

"إِنَّنَا كُنَّا خَلَقْنِيْنَ بِقُدْرَةٍ مَّثْقُولَةٍ".

Verily, We have created all things with Qadar (Divine Preordainments of all things before their creation, as written in the Book of Decrees (Al-Lawh Al-Mahfuz).[3]

In the famous Hadith of Jibril, ‘Umar, may Allāh be pleased with him, said, “One day, as we were sitting with the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ, a man appeared before us: he had on a garment that was pure white and his hair was pure black; though no sign of travel was upon him, not one of us knew him. He sat directly in front of the Prophet ﷺ, making his knees touch those of the Prophet ﷺ, and placing his hands on the Prophet’s thighs. He said, ‘O Muhammad! Inform me about Islam.’ The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said,

"إِنَّ اسْلَامَ أَنْ تَسْهَدَ أَنَّ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ وَأَنْ مُحَمَّدًا رَسُولُ اللَّهِ وَأَنْ نَقُومُ الصَّلَاةَ وَنَتَوْبُيُ الرَّكَاثَةَ وَنَصُومُ رَمَضَانَ وَنْتَحْجُّ النَّبِيَّ إِنَّ..."

[3] (Al-Qamar 54:49)
Islam is to bear witness that none has the right to be worshipped but Allâh and that Muhammad is the Messenger of Allâh; to establish the prayer; to give Zakat; to fast Ramadhan; to make pilgrimage to the House (Ka’bah), for whoever is able to do so. (Recorded by Muslim)\(^1\)

The man said, ‘You have spoken the truth.’ “Umar, may Allâh be pleased with him, said, “We were amazed at him because he first asked a question and then affirmed the veracity of the answer. He then said, ‘Inform me about Iman.’ The Prophet \(\text{ﷺ} \) said,

\[
\text{الإيمان أن يؤمن بالله وملائكته ورسوله واليوم الآخر وتنومن}
\]

‘To believe in Allâh, His Angels, His Books, His Messengers, the Last Day, and to believe in Divine Preordainment, the good of it and the bad of it’.”

One cannot reach the level of Iman unless he is first a Muslim.

**Al-Ihsan**

Literally, it means doing something proficiently and with sincerity; what it means in the Shari’ah is for you to worship Allâh Almighty as if you see Him, though you don’t see him, He certainly sees you. The following verse is a proof for Ihsan:

\[
\text{إِنَّ اللهَ مَعَ الَّذِينَ أَنفَقُواْ وَالَّذِينَ هُم مُّسَبِّبُونَ}
\]

Truly, Allâh is with those who fear Him (keep their duty unto Him), and those who are Mubtinun (good-doers).\(^2\)

One cannot reach the level of Ihsan unless he is first a Muslim and a believer (Mu’min).

**Worship (‘Ibadah)**

Its definition: It is a comprehensive term for all that Allâh loves and is pleased with from sayings and deeds, both outer and inner.

---

\(^1\) *Sahih Muslim* (1:139)

\(^2\) *(An-Nahl* 16:128)*
There are many kinds of worship: Prayer, supplication, love, fear, sacrifice, making vows, etc. All forms of worship must be dedicated purely for Allâh Almighty, Who says:

And they were commanded not, but that they should worship Allâh, and worship none but Him Alone.[1]

Whoever dedicates any kind of worship to other than Allâh, then he has committed major Shirk, and his recompense is an eternal life in the Hellfire. Allâh Almighty says:

Verily, whosoever sets up partners in worship with Allâh, then Allâh has forbidden Paradise for him, and the Fire will be his abode. And for the wrongdoers there are no helpers.[3]

The Existence Of Allâh

That Allâh Almighty exists, is a reality about which there is no doubt; the following attests to that reality:

1) The sending of Messengers and the revelation of Books.
2) The natural disposition of man, which Allâh created him upon.
3) The sound and reasoning mind.

First, The Natural Disposition Of Man

This is often seen when man is afflicted with a disaster or calamity, or when all helpers and friends abandon him: his natural disposition impels him to ask Allâh and to invoke Him to remove the calamity.

---

[1] (Bayyinah 98:5)
[2] (Al Jinn 72:20)
[3] (Al-Ma'idah 5:72)
The Noble Qur'ān confirms this, saying that man turns to Allāh to remove any calamity that afflicts him:

«وَإِذَا مَسَّ أَسْلَنَكَ ضَرٌّ دَعُوا رَبَّكُمَا إِلَّهَيْنَ»

And when some hurt touches man, he cries to his Lord, turning to Him in repentance.\(^1\)

The Qur'ān even gives a clear example of this, the example of a man who is on a boat. As the boat is sailing in clear skies, the ocean suddenly becomes violent and the boat rocks violently. The imminence of death puts him in a state of extreme fear, and it is at this point that he returns to his natural disposition and to his own self by turning to his Lord, hoping to be saved by Him, and supplicating sincerely to Him, without associating partners with Him. Allāh Almighty says:

«إِنَّهُمَا الَّذِيْنَ يَسْتَرِقُونَ فِي الْبَحْرِ وَلَا يَنْتَهُونَ حَتَّىٰ إِذَا كَنَّوْا فِي الْبَحْرِ وَجَعَلُوا يَسْتَمِعُونَ وَسَخَّرُوا مَا أَلْقَاهُمُ اللَّهُ بِأَيْمَانِهِمْ إِنَّمَا يَعْبُدُونَهُمَّ خَالِدُونَ فِي ظُلُمَاتٍ مِّنْهُمْ أَمْهِمْ أَهْيَبُهُمْ إِلَيْهِمْ وَعَدَّوُا اللَّهَ مُكَذِّبِينَ»

He it is Who enables you to travel through land and sea, till when you are in the ships and they sail with them with a favorable wind, and they are glad therein, then comes a stormy wind and the waves come to them from all sides, and they think that they are encircled therein, they invoke Allāh, making their faith pure for Him Alone, saying: “If You deliver us from this, we shall truly be of the grateful.”\(^2\)

Thus we find the innate belief of man in Allāh’s generosity, and no one will deny that except one who is intransigent in the face of the truth.

Second, The Sound And Reasoning Mind

The human mind, if fair and sincere, has no choice but to acknowledge Allāh’s existence, especially when considering this rule: “Nothingness cannot create something.” Allāh Almighty says:

\(^{1}\) (Az-Zumar 39:8)
\(^{2}\) (Yūnus 10:22)
What Must Be Known About Islam

Were they created by nothing, or were they themselves the creators? Or did they create the heavens and the earth? Nay, but they have no firm belief.\[1\]

The conclusion of this verse is based on the following premises. “Did nothing create something?” The answer is that “nothing” doesn’t create anything at all. Then comes the next premise: “Did you create yourselves?” The answer is no, we didn’t create ourselves. And then follows the third premise, “If you weren’t created by ‘nothing’ and you didn’t create yourselves, did you create the universe and its intricate system?” The answer: the one who cannot create himself cannot create anything else and the one who cannot benefit himself cannot benefit others. The conclusion then is this: if we were not created by “nothingness”, if we didn’t create ourselves, and if we didn’t create the universe, then there must be a creator, and He is Allâh Almighty, the Creator of all that exists — as He Almighty says:

Allâh is the Creator of all things.\[2\]

By merely observing and contemplating the creation, one is shown that there is a creator, and that is why Allâh ordered us to ponder, study, and contemplate His creation, for the creation indicates the Supreme and Perfect Creator. Allâh Almighty says:

Verily! In the creation of the heavens and the earth, and in the alternation of night and day, and the ships which sail through

---

[1] (At-Tur 52:35,36)
the sea with that which is of use to mankind, and the water (rain) which Allah sends down from the sky and makes the earth alive therewith after its death, and the moving (living) creatures of all kinds that He has scattered therein, and in the veering of winds and clouds which are held between the sky and the earth, are indeed Ayat (proofs, evidences, signs, etc.) for people of understanding.\[^1\]

\[^1\] (Al-Baqarah 2:164)


**Tawhid And Its Categories**

**The Definition Of Tawhid:**

To single out Allah with worship, love, fear, obedience, submission, hope; and with seeking protection and help. To believe that He is One in His Self and in His Attributes, that He is One in His Sovereignty and in His actions. Indeed, He is One in His Self, in His Names, and in His Attributes; there is none that is equal, comparable, or similar to Him.

There is nothing like Him, and He is the All-Hearer, the All-Seer.[1]

He is One in His Sovereignty and actions; as Creator, Planner, and Sustainer of all that exists, He has no partner:

Say: “O Allah! Possessor of the kingdom, You give the kingdom to whom You will, and You take the kingdom from whom You will...”[2]

As the One Who deserves worship alone, He is One, for there is none that deserves to be worshipped but Him. Allah Almighty says:

Say: “Verily, I am commanded to worship Allah making religion purely for Him.”[3]

**There Are Three Categories Of Tawhid**

1) **Tawhid Ar-Rububiyyah**

2) **Tawhid Al-Uluhiyyah**

3) **Tawhid Al-Asma’ was-Sifat**

---

[1] (Asb-Shura 42:11)

[2] (Aal 'Imran 3:26)

First, Tawhid Ar-Ruhuhiyyab

It is to believe in the oneness of Allâh’s actions, such as creating the creation, providing for them, giving life, causing death, sending down rain, causing crops to grow. The monotheistic Muslim believes that Allâh is the Creator, the Provider, the One Who brings benefit, and the only One Who can harm, the One Who brings to life, the One Who causes death, the King of the entire dominion — in His Hand are the reins of the heavens and the earth.

The polytheists believed in this category of Tawhid, for Allâh Almighty says about them:

قُلْ مِنْ يُؤْفِيكُمْ مِنَ السَّمَاوَاتِ وَالأَرْضِ أُنَّمَيْنِ يُتَعَالِمُانِ السَّمَاعَ وَالأَبْصَرَ وَمَنْ يَتَقَلَّبُ

الْحَقَّ مِنَ الْمَكَانِ وَيُؤْتِجْ الْمَيْتَ مِنَ الْحَيٍّ وَمَنْ يَتَقَلَّبُ الآَمَرَ مِنْ نِسَابِ اللَّهِ فَقُلْ

أَفَلَا تَنْفِقُونَ

Say: “Who provides for you from the sky and from the earth? Or who owns hearing and sight? And who brings out the living from the dead and brings out the dead from the living? And who disposposes the affairs?” They will say: “Allâh.” Say: “Will you not then be afraid of Allâh’s punishment?”[1]

Second, Tawhid Al-Ulubiyyab

This means to single out Allâh with those actions that His worshipper performs as a form of worship — in ways that Allâh Almighty and His Messenger ﷺ have legislated. It means to believe that Allâh alone is the One Who has the right to be worshipped and obeyed, and that there is none that deserves to be worshipped other than Him. Therefore, all acts of worship must be performed purely for Him. So, when one prays, he must pray only to Allâh; when one supplicates, one must supplicate only to Him. When one slaughters an animal, it must be done by Allâh’s Name only. When one makes a vow, one must do it only for Allâh. When one seeks help, one must seek it from Allâh — in those matters that only Allâh is capable of. When one calls out for help, one must call out for help from Allâh — in those matters that only Allâh is capable of. To believe and apply Tawhid in this sense requires one to:

[1] (Yunus 10:31)
- Worship none but Allâh.
- Fear none but Allâh.
- Submit to none but Allâh.
- Seek refuge in none but Allâh.
- Seek help from none but Allâh.
- Trust in none but in Allâh.
- Seek judgement from none but Allâh’s Legislation.
- To not make permissible except that which Allâh has made permissible.
- To not make forbidden except that which Allâh has made forbidden.

In an authentic Hadîth, ‘Adi bin Hatim, may Allâh be pleased with him — who was a Christian in the Days of Ignorance — heard the Prophet سّ ن ح recite this verse:

They (Jews and Christians) took their rabbis and their monks to be their lords besides Allâh, and (they also took as their Lord) Messiah, son of Maryam (Mary).[1]

‘Adi said, “O Messenger of Allâh, they wouldn’t worship them (i.e., the rabbis and monks).” The Messenger of Allâh سّ ن ح said,

“Indeed, they (the rabbis and monks) would forbid them from that which was lawful, and they would permit them to do that which was forbidden. They (the Christians and Jews) followed them (in that): that was their worship of them.”

The Taubid With Which The Messengers Were Sent

Taubid Al-Uluhiyyah is the Taubid that the Messengers invited people to accept, and it is that category of Taubid that people
rejected, from the time of Nuh, peace be upon him, until that of Muhammad ﷺ. Allâh Almighty says:

وَمَا أَرْسَلْنَا مِن قَبْلِكَ مِن رَسُولٍ إِلَّا نُوحَى إِلَيْهِ اَلَّذِي لَأَلَا إِلَّا اَلَّذِي قُدِّشَ بَيْنَهُ وَمَا كَانَ لِمَا نَزَّلَ عَلَيْهِ مِن طَاعَةٍ

And We did not send any Messenger before you but We inspired him (saying): Laa Ilaha Illa Ana [none has the right to be worshipped but I], so worship Me.[1]

And Allâh Almighty says:

وَلَقَدْ نَسِئَتْ نَعْلَمَا بِمَنْ أَذَقْنَا إِلَّا أَبِي أَحْيَى اَلَّذِي حَكَمَ عَلَيْهِ الْظَّغَنُوتُ

And verily, We have sent among every Ummah (community, nation) a Messenger (proclaiming): “Worship Allâh, and avoid (or keep away from) Tagbut (all false deities).”[2]

Whosoever worships Allâh alone, leaving the worship of all else, has indeed followed the straight path and has grasped the most trustworthy handhold:

فَمَن يَكُفُّرُ بِالْظَّغَنُوتِ وَيَعْبُرُ بِيَدِ اللَّهِ فَقَدْ أَسْتَفْسَكْ بِالْعُمُودِ الْبَاتِنِ لَأَفْضَلُهَا لَهَ

Whoever disbelieves in Tagbut and believes in Allâh, then he has grasped the most trustworthy handhold that will never break. [3]

And Allâh said:

(نِمَّادُ) لَا تَنَبِّئُوا إِلَّا الْمَطَرَّ تَقِنِمْ إِنَّمَا هُوَ إِلَّا إِلَّا وَمَعَهُ إِلَّهَ يَغْلِبُ

(O mankind!): “Take not Ilabain (two gods in worship, etc.). Verily, He is (the) only One Ilab (God). Then, fear Me (Allâh) much.”[4]

The polytheists among the Arabs acknowledged that Allâh created all things, while their gods neither created nor provided nor brought

things to life nor caused death; Allâh says:

\[ \text{ولَيْسَ سَأَلَتُهُم مِّن حَيَاةٍ عَلَى الْأَسمَارِ وَالأَرْضِ لِيُؤْفِينَ حَلَقْهُمُ الصَّمْرَ الْعَبْدِ} \]

And indeed if you ask them, “Who has created the heavens and the earth?” They will surely say: “The All-Mighty, the All-Knower created them.”\[^{1}\]

 Nevertheless, they were polytheists because along with Allâh Almighty they worshipped other gods, gods that in their thinking, were intermediaries between them and Allâh. So, because they rejected \textit{Tawhid Al-Uluhiyyah}, their belief in \textit{Tawhid Ar-Rububiyyah} didn’t benefit them at all:

\[ \text{وَمَا يُؤْمِنُ أَسْتَرْهُم بِيَدِ اللَّهِ إِلاَّ وَهُمْ شَكِيرُونَ} \]

And most of them believe not in Allâh except that they attribute partners to Him.\[^{2}\]

They didn’t single out Allâh for worship and for supplication and for seeking help; rather, they associated partners with Him in their worship:

\[ \text{وَمَا تَضُرُّهُمْ إِلَّا لِيُقُولُوا إِلَى اللَّهِ رَبَّنَا} \]

“We worship them only that they may bring us near to Allâh.”\[^{3}\]

\[ \text{فَمَتَّعْنَا بِعَبْدِ اللَّهِ} \]

“These are our intercessors with Allâh.”\[^{4}\]

So again, it becomes clear that although one may believe in \textit{Tawhid Ar-Rububiyyah}, one is a polytheist and not a Muslim as long as one doesn’t believe in \textit{Tawhid Al-Uluhiyyah}.

\textbf{Who Is Allâh?}

Indeed Allâh is the One True God: He has no partner and there is none that is equal or similar to Him, not similar to His Self, to His Attributes, or to His actions. With this belief, we are different from

\[^{1}\] (Az-Zukhruf 43:9)
\[^{2}\] (Yusuf 12:106)
\[^{3}\] (Az-Zumar 39:3)
\[^{4}\] (Yunus 10:18)
those who ascribe a wife or a child to Allâh:

> فَلَوْ هُوَ آدَمُ أَحَدُ ١ أَنْتُمُ الصَّفُّ ٣ لَمْ يَلَمْ يَبْلُغَ ١ وَلَمْ يَلَمْ

Say: “He is Allâh, (the) One; Allâbus-Samad (Allâh – the Self-Sufficient Master, Whom all creatures need, He neither eats nor drinks). He begets not, nor was He begotten. And there is none coequal or comparable to Him.”[1]

With our belief that is explained above, we are different from those who claim that Allâh is the third of three — far, far above is Allâh Almighty from the evil they ascribe to Him:

> لَنَّقُدْ صَفَّرَ الْخَيْرَ قَالُوا إِنَّهُ خَايِلُ تَلَّدَهُ وَسَمِىَ مِنْ إِنَّهُ إِنَّهُ

Surely, disbelievers are those who said: “Allâh is the third of the three.” But there is no Ilâb (god) (none who has the right to be worshipped) but One Ilâb (God—Allâh).[2]

And your Ilâb (God) is One Ilâb (God - Allâh), Laa Ilaha Illa Huwa (there is none who has the right to be worshipped but He), the Most Beneficent, the Most Merciful.[3]

With that same belief, we are opposite of those who believe that a god other than Allâh Almighty has any power in the universe:

> لَوْ كَانَ فِي هَٰذَا الْأَلَٰهُ خَيْرٌ إِلَّا أَنَّهُ لَمَّا سَمِىَ فَتَحَكَّمُ بِالْأَلَٰهِ الْخَيْرِ مَا يَبْلُغُونَ

Had there been therein (in the heavens and the earth) gods besides Allâh, then verily both would have been ruined. Glorified is Allâh, the Lord of the Throne, (High is He) above what they attribute to Him! [4]

---

[1] (Al-Ikhlas 112:1-4)  
[2] (Al-Ma'idah 5:73)  
Third, *Tawhid Al-Asma’ was-Sfat* (Names and Attributes)

Under this category, we affirm for Allāh all that He has affirmed regarding Himself and all that His Messenger Muḥammad ﷺ affirmed for Him — in terms of His Beautiful Names and the Attributes that those Names indicate; but we do not compare His Qualities to those of creation, we do not exemplify those qualities, we do not distort their meanings, and we do not effectively negate their implications.\(^1\) What we do believe is that Allāh has Names and Attributes that indicate His Perfection and Greatness, and no one is similar to Him in those Names and Attributes.

Allāh’s Names and Attributes are mentioned in the Qur’ān and in the authentic Sunnah of the Prophet ﷺ, and we must believe that they are real, for Allāh Almighty says:

> لَاتَّبَعَهُمَا كُنَّا نَعْمَةً وَزَوْدًا عَلَى أَصْحَابِ الْبَصِيرَةِ

There is nothing like Him, and He is the All-Hearer, the All-Seeer.\(^2\)

---

\(^1\) Shaikh ʿAbdur-Rahman bin Sa'di in *As-Suw'al wal Jawab fee Abānīmil-Mubimmat*, pg. 13.

\(^2\) (*Asb-Shura* 42:11)
Examples Of Allâh’s Names And Attributes

1) Some Of His Names: Ar-Rahman, Ar-Rahim, Al-Qahir, Al-Qadir, As-Sami’, Al-Basir, Al-Quddus.

2) Some Of His Attributes: The Highness, the Hearing, the Seeing, the Ability, that He has a Face and Hand, and that He Descends (during the last third of every night).

The Messengers

After clarifying the different kinds of Tawhid, we move on to the Messengers and the wisdom behind their being sent. Allâh sent the Messengers ﷺ to the people, so that they could call them to His religion, to worshipping Him alone — without associating partners with Him, and to avoiding the worship of others. The first Messenger was Nuh, peace be upon him, and the last one was Muhammad ﷺ.

The Wisdom Behind Sending The Messengers

Allâh sent them as a proof upon mankind, to convey the message of the religion to the people, to give glad tidings of Paradise and of a great reward to the obedient one, and to warn the disobedient one of a severe punishment and the Hellfire. Allâh Almighty says:

"وَرَسَلَ مُّسَلِّمَ الْأَمِينَ وَمُنَذِّرِينَ إِنَّلاَ يُجْعَلُ لِلنَّاسِ عَلَىٰ الْحَيَاةِ الْبَعْدِ عَالِمَ أُرْسَالًا"

Messengers as bearers of good news as well as of warning in order that mankind should have no plea against Allâh after the Messengers.[1]

[1] (An-Nisa’ 4:165)
The Virtue Of Tawhid

It is a great virtue to have belief in Tawhid; indeed, Allah made that belief to be a saving ship for His creatures in this life and in the Hereafter. As for this life — if one is from the people of Tawhid, living his life according to its implications, and not associating any partners with Allah whatsoever, Allah Almighty will shower him with safety, peace, guidance, and a good life, for He Almighty says:

It is those who believe and confuse not their belief with wrong, for them (only) there is security and they are the guided.\(^1\)

“Wrong” here means to mix one’s faith with the association of partners with Allah. When one avoids that wrong, one will have achieved security and guidance. Allah Almighty says:

Whoever works righteousness, whether male or female, while he (or she) is a true believer verily, to him We will give a good life.\(^2\)

As for the Hereafter — when one dies upon Tawhid and meets his Lord, not associating any partners with Him, He enters Paradise and Allah saves him from the Hellfire. In an authentic Hadith, the Prophet ﷺ said:

Indeed, Allah has forbidden upon the Fire the one who says, “None has the right to be worshipped but Allah,” seeking from that Allah’s Face.\(^3\)

---

\(^1\) (Al-An’am 6:82)
\(^2\) (An-Nahl 16:97)
\(^3\) Agreed upon. Recorded by Al-Bukhari (6:202) and Muslim, the Book of Faith (1:61) no. 54 from the Hadith of Ithab bin Malik.
Shirk And Its Categories

There are two kinds of Shirk:

First, The Greater Shirk

The Greater Shirk means either to worship other than Allâh Almighty or to make partners with Allâh in something that is specifically His; for example, to take someone as His partner in worship, obedience, love, fear, supplication, and the seeking of help.

When one associates partners with Allâh — regardless of who that partner is, such as a man, animal, plant, or inanimate object — one has perpetrated the Greater Shirk, examples of which are as follows:

- To supplicate to that partner as one supplicates to Allâh.
- To love that partner as one loves Allâh.
- To hope from that partner as one hopes from Allâh.
- To submit oneself in obedience to that partner as one submits in obedience to Allâh.
- To fear that partner as one fears Allâh.
- To seek a ruling or judgement from other than Allâh’s Shari’ah.

Allâh Almighty says:

\[ 	ext{“Wa atdîdû 'llah wala mskrû tây yuha‘ manîha.”} \]

Worship Allâh and join none with Him in worship.\[^1\]

Of course, the Greater Shirk is the worst and most severe kind of Shirk; indeed, it is the greatest sin with Allâh, for Allâh does not accept any deed from its perpetrator, regardless of how pious he may be otherwise. If one dies, associating partners with Allâh, Allâh will not forgive him, for He says:

\[ 	ext{“Innallâh la ya'â'zû 'llâh wa'mskrû tây wa'mskrû tây la yinâ isticâfat wa'mm b'dîr 'llâh.”} \]

Verily, Allâh forgives not that partners should be set up with him in worship, but He forgives except that (anything else) to

\[^1\] (An-Nisa’ 4:36)
whom He pleases, and whoever sets up partners with Allâh in worship, he has indeed invented a tremendous sin.\[^{[1]}\]

Whoever dies upon this form of *Shirk* is from the dwellers of the Hellfire, for the Prophet ﷺ said:

\[
	ext{مَنْ مَاتَ وَهُوَ يُشَرِّكُ بِهِ دَخَلَ النَّارُ}
\]

Whoever dies calling upon other than Allâh as a rival, he enters the Hellfire.\[^{[2]}\]

In another *Hadith*, the Prophet ﷺ said:

\[
	ext{مَنْ أَقْبِيَ الَّذِي لَأْيَضُرُّكَ يُشَرِّكُ يُضِنِّبُهُ دَخَلَ الْجَنَّةَ وَمَنْ أَقْبِيَ الَّذِي يُضِنِّبُهُ يُضُرُّكَ دَخَلَ النَّارُ}
\]

Whoever meets Allâh without associating any partner with Him enters Paradise. Whoever meets Him, associating any partner with Him enters the Hellfire.\[^{[3]}\]

The Muslim, therefore, worships and invokes only Allâh, and submits only to Him, for Allâh Almighty says:

\[
	ext{قُلُ إِنِّي سَلَّمْتُ وَلَسْكُمْ وَعَلَيْتُ وَسَافَرُونَ يَقُولُونَ أَلا شَرَكُوا بِآدَمَ وَبِلَّهَةَ}
\]

Say: “Verily, my *Salat* (prayer), my sacrifice, my living, and my dying are for Allâh, the Lord of the ‘Alamin (mankind, jinn and all that exists). He has no partner. And of this I have been commanded, and I am the first of the Muslims.”\[^{[4]}\]

**Second, The Lesser *Shirk***

It consists of various categories:

1) A small amount of *Riya’* (doing good deeds for show); for example, when one prays, fasts, or gives charity, he is seeking other than Allâh’s Face; hence, he is mixing good deeds with bad ones. The

---

\[^{[1]}\] (An-Nisa’ 4:48)

\[^{[2]}\] Al-Bukhari in the Book of *Tafsîr* (5:153) and Muslim (1:94) from Ibn Mas‘ûd.

\[^{[3]}\] Recorded by Muslim (1:94) from Jabir.

\[^{[4]}\] Al-An’am 6:162,163. Included here is one whom people see doing a righteous deed, but he did not do it out of sincerity, and also one who does a righteous deed secretly but wants to let people know about it.
Prophet ﷺ said:

أَخَافُ مَا أَخَافُ عَلَيْكُمُ الشَّرِّكُ الأَضْعَرُ

What I fear most for you is the Lesser Shirk.

When asked about it, he ﷺ said:

أَرْيَا

Riya'.'[1]

When one performs any good deed or act of worship to impress or please people thereby, then he has committed Riya', which is forbidden. In another Hadith related by Shaddad bin ‘Aws, may Allah be pleased with him, the Prophet ﷺ said:

أَنْ قَلِلْ رَيَآٰ فَقَدْ أَشْرَكْتَ، وَأَنْ سَمِعْ رَيَآٰ فَقَدْ أَشْرَكْتَ

Whoever prays, showing off to others, he has indeed committed Shirk; whoever fasts, showing off to others, he has indeed committed Shirk; whoever gives charity, showing off to others, he has indeed committed Shirk.[2]

2) Another form of the lesser Shirk is to swear by anyone other than Allah, for instance, to swear by the Prophet ﷺ, by the Ka'bah, or by one's parents. In an authentic Hadith related by Ibn ‘Umar, may Allah be pleased with him, the Prophet ﷺ said:

إِنَّ اللَّهَ يَنْهَيُكُمْ أَنْ تَعْفَفُوا رَبَائِكُمْ، مَنْ كَانَ حَالَالْيَ وَالْخَلْفِ وَاللَّهُ أَوْ يَضُرَّتْ

Indeed, Allah has forbidden you from swearing by your fathers; whoever makes an oath, let him swear by Allah or remain silent.

3) Another form of the Lesser Shirk is for one to say the following expressions:

---

[1] Imam Ahmad (4:126) and Ibn Majah (2:1406) from Shaddad bin Aws. Ahmad also recorded it from a Hadith of Mahmud bin Lubaid (5:428).

What Must Be Known About Islam

- “What Allāh wills and what you will.”
- “This is from Allāh and from you.”
- “I am what I am because of Allāh and because of you.”
- “I have no one but Allāh and you.”
- “I place my trust upon Allāh and upon you.”
- “Were it not for Allāh and you, such and such would (or wouldn’t) have happened.”

Based on one’s intention when saying these phrases, this category may even become a form of the Greater Shirk.
Protecting The Belief In Tawhid

The Prophet ﷺ strove hard to keep the belief in Tawhid clean and pure in the hearts of Muslims, making every effort to prevent doubt or Shirk from entering those hearts. He ﷺ taught his Companions to turn with their hearts to Allâh only, to seek help in Him alone, and to put their trust in Him alone. As soon as the Prophet ﷺ saw anything that might weaken the relationship between the Muslims and their Lord, that might shake the belief of Tawhid in their hearts, he ﷺ raced to warn the Muslims regarding the effect of that matter on their faith. Some examples of such matters are as follows:

1) Magic:

Incantations, spells, or charms that are used to have an effect on hearts and bodies, intended to make them sick, to make people kill one another, to divide between a man and his wife, and so on. Magic is a matter that depends on secrecy and concealment. Magicians use the above-mentioned techniques to inflict harm on people, and in the plainest of terms, Islam forbade magic when the Prophet ﷺ said:

"Stay away from the seven grave (and deadly) sins."

The Companions, may Allâh be pleased with them, asked, “And what are they, O Messenger of Allâh?” He ﷺ said:

"The seven grave sins are: associating partners with Allâh, magic, taking a life that Allâh has forbidden unless it is by a right, consuming usury, consuming the wealth of an orphan, fleeing on the day of battle, and slandering chaste innocent women."

In Islam, the magician’s punishment is execution — by being struck on his neck with a sword. The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said:

The punishment of the magician is striking him with the sword.\[1\]

The one who is deceived by magicians, believing in them, going to them, and seeking a cure from an ailment or help in any matter that involves the unseen, has indeed disbelieved in what was revealed to Muhammad ﷺ.

The proof for that: The Prophet ﷺ said:

«لا يس ممن نَطَّأ أو نَطَأَر له أو نَكَأْهُ أو نَكَأْهَن له أو سِحْر أو سِحْرَن له»

These are not from us: one who sees (and believes in) an evil omen or has someone else see it for him, one who predicts the future or has someone predict it for him, and one who performs magic or has it performed for him.\[2\]

Abu Hurairah, may Allâh be pleased with him, related that the Prophet ﷺ said:

«فَمَن أتى كاهنًا فصِّلَهُ بِمَا يَتَوَلَّهُ فَقَدْ كَفَرَ بِمَا أتَيَهُ علَى مُحِمَّدٍ ﷺ»

Whoever goes to a soothsayer and believes in what he says, has indeed disbelieved in what has been revealed to Muhammad.

It was recorded by Abu Dawud and the remainder of the four Sunan Compilers.

2) Ruqya (Incantations):

From this category, Islam forbade that which involves Shirk, such as invoking anyone other than Allâh, seeking help from anyone other than Allâh, or seeking protection from anyone other than Allâh. Examples of such spells are those that use the names of angels, of devils, of jinn, and so on.

\[1\] Recorded by At-Tirmithi (4:60). Its chain contains Isma'il bin Muslim Al-Makki who was graded weak in Hadith. See the discussion of At-Tirmithi after the Hadith.

\[2\] Shaikh Muhammad bin 'Abdul-Wahhab mentioned this in his Kitab Al-Tawhid, and he attributed it to Al-Bazzar, with a good (Jaṣīld) chain. See Fatbul-Majid 237.
However, if, having the same purpose, one recites verses of the Qur’an, says Allâh’s Names or Attributes, or supplicates to Allâh alone, then that is permissible because it doesn’t involve Shirk.

‘Awf bin Malik, may Allâh be pleased with him, said that they used to recite incantations during the days of ignorance and so he asked, “O Messenger of Allâh, how do you view that?” The Prophet ﷺ answered, “Present to me your Ruqya; there is no harm in using Ruqya (incantations that are read over the sick) as long as there is no Shirk involved.”[1]

The Ruqya Of The Prophet ﷺ:
The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ would use Ruqya; one form that is related to us from him is the following:

اللَّهُمَّ رَبَّ الْبَشَرِّ، وَالَّذِي يَفْعَلُ مَنْ يَفْعَلُ، وَمَنْ يَتَّبِعُ كَمَا يَتَّبِعُ.)

O Allâh, Lord of mankind, take away the severe sickness, and cure: You are the Curer; there is no cure except Your cure, a cure that leaves behind no sickness.[2]

3) Al-Tama’im, the plural of Tamimah (An Amulet):

It is something that one hangs on the neck of children; it consists of beads or other materials. They claimed that it would protect them from evil and envy.

The Prophet ﷺ forbade the use of such things, because no one drives away evil and envy except Allâh. The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said:

مَنْ عَلَقَ كَيْمَةً فَلاَ أَنَمَّ اللَّهُ لَهُ، وَمَنْ عَلَقَ وَرَدَعَ فَلاَ وَرَعَ اللَّهُ لَهُ.

Whoever wears a Tamimah, then may Allâh not complete for him his affair, and whoever wears a charm, Allâh will entrust him to it.[3]

According to the correct view, it is not only forbidden to wear a Tamimah around one’s neck, but it is also forbidden to hang a small

[1] Recorded by Muslim and Abu Dawud.
[2] Al-Bukhari in the Book of Patients (5675), as well as Muslim (2191).
copy of the Qur’an around one’s neck, first because of the general prohibition, and second because we must block the door to further evils.\[1\]

To hang up other things around one’s neck, seeking some sort of benefit is an act of Shirk. It has been reported that the Prophet ﷺ said:

«فِي عَلَقِ الْتَّمَيْمَةِ قَدْ أَشَارَ رَبُّكَ»

Whoever hangs a Tamimah has indeed committed Shirk.\[2\]

4) At-Tiwalah (Spells To Cause Love):

It is an item that a woman makes, thinking that it has power to make her more beloved to her husband. The Prophet ﷺ forbade this practice because through it, one seeks benefit or seeks to ward off harm from other than Allâh, which is why it has been related in a Hadith:

«إِنَّ الْرَّقَيَّةَ وَالْتَّمَيْمَةَ وَالْتَيْمَةَ شَرِيكَ»

Indeed, Ar-Ruqya, At-Tama’im, and At-Tiwalah are Shirk.\[3\]

Whoever Depends On Something, Then He Is Entrusted to It

Whoever believes that some of the forbidden matters mentioned above have a special effect on things, such as the ability to cure the sick, to fulfill needs, to ward off evil, to bring back the lost, or so on, then Allâh forsakes that person, leaving him to what he believes. The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said:

«فِي عَلَقِ الْمَيْمَةِ وَالْعَلَقِ الْبَلَّاءِ»

Whoever depends upon something, he is left to it.

This means that whoever turns not to Allâh but to another, with his heart attached to that other, all the while forgetting Allâh, then Allâh forsakes that person, leaving him to the object of his trust or worship. But whoever trusts Allâh, entrusts Him his affairs, and his

---

\[1\] This opinion is held by Ibn Mas’ud, Ibn ‘Abbas, may Allâh be pleased with them, some of the Tabi’in, and the noble Shaikh, ‘Abdul-Azîz bin Baz.

\[2\] As-Silsilah As-Sahihah no. 492 and Sabih Al Jami’ no. 6394.

\[3\] Abu Dawud (4:212) and Ibn Majah (2:1167), from Ibn ‘Abbas.
heart is attached to Allâh, then Allâh suffices him, protecting him from all evil, making easy for him every difficult matter, and saving him from every trial. Allâh Almighty says:

(And whosoever puts his trust in Allâh, then He will suffice him.\(^1\))

**Exaggerating Over the Righteous People**

Islam forbids us from exceeding the proper bounds when it comes to praising people or glorifying them. Muslims know that no matter how high the level is of a person, he is still a creature of Allâh. Allâh Almighty says:

(There is none in the heavens and the earth but comes to the Most Beneficent as a slave.\(^2\))

Islam forbade us from exceeding the proper bounds in this matter so that *Tawhid* may remain pure and clean, and so that deeds may be performed purely for Allâh. Exaggerating the good qualities of people most definitely leads to associating partners with Allâh.

In this regard, we have the example of the Christians, who continued to exaggerate the qualities of Jesus, peace be upon him, until they made Him a god on one occasion, and the son of a god on another, and a part of a god on yet another occasion — all of which is disbelief itself. Allâh Almighty says:

(\(\text{Surely, they have disbelieved who say: “Allâh is the Messiah, son of Maryam.”}\)\(^3\)

\(\text{فَقَالُوا إِنَّمَا يُلَوَّنُ بَيْنَهُ وَمَرْيَمَ}\\\text{الْمَلَائِكَةَ أَنَّهُ هُوَ الْمُبَيِّنُ بَيْنَهُ وَمَرْيَمَ}\\\text{يُلَوَّنُ بَيْنَهُ وَلَّهُ}\\\text{مَثَلُ}\\\text{كَمَا ذَكَرْنَا}\\\text{لَهُم}\\\text{مِنْ شَيْءٍ غَيْرَ طَائِرِينَ}\\\text{وَبَيْنَ الْمَلَائِكَةِ وَالْجَاهِلِيَّةِ }\\\text{مَنْ يَتَّقُونَ}\\\text{مَا يَقُولُونَ}\\\text{يَقُولُونَ}\\\text{كُلُّ مَا أَخْبَاهُ}\\\text{مُخْتَلِفُ}\\\text{مَا أَخْبَاهُ}\\\text{مُخْتَلِفُ}\)\(^3\)

\(\text{الْمَلَائِكَةَ}\\\text{مَثَلُ}\\\text{كَمَا ذَكَرْنَا}\\\text{لَهُم}\\\text{مِنْ شَيْءٍ غَيْرَ طَائِرِينَ}\\\text{وَبَيْنَ الْمَلَائِكَةِ وَالْجَاهِلِيَّةِ }\\\text{مَنْ يَتَّقُونَ}\\\text{مَا يَقُولُونَ}\\\text{يَقُولُونَ}\\\text{كُلُّ مَا أَخْبَاهُ}\\\text{مُخْتَلِفُ}\\\text{مَا أَخْبَاهُ}\\\text{مُخ�ْتَلِفُ}\)\(^3\)

\(^1\) (Al-Talaq 65:3)
\(^2\) (Maryam 19:93)
\(^3\) (Al-Ma'idah 5:72)
Surely, disbelievers are those who said: “Allâh is the third of the three.”[1]

They only deviated so far from the correct path because they exceeded the proper bounds regarding ‘Iesa. Allâh clarified that fact and made clear to them the way of the truth, saying:

O People of the Scripture (Jews and Christians)! Do not exceed the limits in your religion, nor say of Allâh but the truth.[2]

So that the Muslims are saved from what other nations have fallen into; the Prophet ﷺ said:

Do not praise me as the Christians praised the son of Maryam; indeed, I am only a slave, so say, “The slave of Allâh and His Messenger.”[3]

Overexaggerating the Righteous People Is The Basis For The Worship Of Idols

It has been related that the names of the idols that were worshipped are the names of righteous people; they had followers who would glorify them, and when they died, those followers said, “Let us erect statues where they used to gather so that we may continue to remember them.” When that generation died and when much time passed, future generations came, not knowing the purpose of the statues; the Shaitan seduced them into believing that their fathers and grandfathers used to worship the statues, and so they began to do the same.

[1] (Al-Ma’idah 5:73)
The Second Pillar: Prayer

From its conditions is purity, which is to be performed:

You must acquaint yourself with purification, which is of three kinds.

First, Wudhu’ (Ablution):

It is a compulsory mode of purification that is performed after the lesser Hadath (matters that cause one to exit from a state of purity) occurs. Examples of the lesser Hadath occurring are when one urinates, defecates, passes wind, falls into a deep sleep, or eats the meat of a camel.

How To Perform Wudhu’

1) Make intention in your heart, and not with your tongue, to perform Wudhu’. The Prophet wouldn’t utter his intention — not for his Wudhu’, not for his prayer, and not any of his other acts of worship. And because Allâh Almighty knows what is in our hearts, He doesn’t need to be informed of it verbally.

2) Begin with Allâh’s Name, saying, “Bismillâh (In the Name of Allâh).”

3) Next, wash your hands three times.

4) Put water in your mouth, shake it, and then expel it. After you put a handful of water in your mouth, moving that hand upwards, inhale through your nose the water that remains in your hand (exaggerate when you inhale, unless you are fasting), and then blow the water out through your nose, slightly squeezing the two sides of your nose, making sure all of the water comes out. Repeat this process three times.

5) Wash your face three times — in terms of width, from one ear to the other; and in terms of length, from where the hair on your head begins to grow to the bottom of your beard.

6) Then wash your hands and forearms three times — from the tips of your fingers until — and including — your elbows. Begin with the right arm, and then move on to the left one.

7) Wipe your head once with your wet hands; pass them over your

---

[1] Taken from a dissertation by Shaikh Muhammad bin Salih Al-'Uthaimin.
head, moving from the front of your head until the back, and then returning. Then wipe your ears (without wetting your hands again).

8) Wash your feet, including your ankles, three times.

**Second, Al-Ghusl (Bath):**

It is performed after the greater kind of Hadath takes place. Examples of the greater kind of Hadath are menstruation and sexual intercourse. Al-Ghusl is performed as follows:

1) Make intention with your heart, and not with your tongue, to perform Ghusl.
2) Begin with Allâh’s Name, saying, “Bismillâh (In the Name of Allâh).”
3) Perform the Wudhu’ in its entirety.
4) Generously pour water over your head three times.
5) Finally, wash the rest of your body.

**Third, At-Tayammum (Dry Ablution):**

It is an obligatory form of purification that is performed using clean earth, and it is a substitute for Wudhu’ and Ghusl — and it is performed by someone who cannot find water or who can find water, but will somehow be harmed by using it.

**How To Perform At-Tayammum**

Make intention to perform Tayammum as a replacement for either the Wudhu’ or Ghusl (whichever of the two was obligatory upon you). Next, strike the earth — or whatever is connected to the earth, such as walls — and then wipe your face and hands.

**How Does A Sick Person Purify Himself?**

1) Like others, the sick person must purify himself with water, performing Wudhu’ from the lesser Hadath, and performing Ghusl from the greater Hadath.
2) If he cannot purify himself using water — either because he is not able to, or because he fears that his sickness will intensify, or he fears that the healing process will be delayed — then he must perform Tayammum.
3) To perform Tayammum, he must strike the ground once. Then
he must wipe his entire face, and then finally, he wipes his hands, wiping one against the other.

4) If a sick person is not able to purify himself, then another person should administer Wudhu' or Tayammum (whichever applies) for him.

5) If some of the Wudhu' areas are injured, then one should wash those areas with water. If washing worsens the injury, one may pass wet hands over the affected area. If even wiping wet hands would worsen the injury, one may perform Tayammum over the affected area.

6) If some of the Wudhu' areas are injured and are bound in cloth or plaster, then rather than washing those areas, one may pass wet hands over them. In this instance, Tayammum is not necessary because wiping replaces washing.

7) It is permissible to perform Tayammum using a wall or anything pure that has dust on it. But if the wall is wiped over with a material other than what comes from the ground, such as paint, then Tayammum is not performed using it unless it has dust on it.

8) If Tayammum cannot be performed using the ground or wall or anything else that has dust, then there is no harm in putting dust in a container or on a handkerchief and then performing Tayammum using that dust.

9) When one performs Tayammum for prayer and then remains in a state of purity when the time for the next prayer arrives, then one may perform that second prayer based upon the Tayammum that he performed earlier. So because he remains in a state of purity, and because nothing takes him out of that state, he doesn’t need to repeat the Tayammum for the second prayer.

10) The sick person must purify his body from all impurities, but in case that he is not able to remove those impurities, he may pray as he is: his prayer is correct and he doesn’t have to repeat it.

11) The sick person must offer his prayer wearing a clean and pure garment. If the garment is soiled by an impurity, he must wash it or change into a clean and pure garment. In case that it is not
possible for him to change his clothing or clean the clothes he is wearing, he may pray as he is: his prayer is correct and he doesn’t have to repeat it.

12) The sick person must pray on something pure. If the area became impure, then it is his duty to wash it or to put something pure over it.

13) The sick person may not delay the prayer until its time is over; his inability to purify himself is not an excuse. He must purify himself as much as he is able to and then he must pray his prayer in time, even if there is an impurity he is unable to remove — on his body, his garment, or the place where he is praying.

**As-Salat: The Prayer**

As-Salat is a form of worship that consists of both sayings and actions: it opens with the Takhir (saying, “Allâhu Akbar”) and it ends with the Taslim (saying, “As-Salaamu ‘Alaikum wa-Rahmatullah”).

What follows is a description of the Prophet’s prayer,\(^1\) which we present to every male and female Muslim, so that all who read it may strive to follow the Prophetﷺ, for he ﷺ said:

> صلى الله ﷺ عليه وسلم وأصابوه وأمسحا وطبوس وغومحم وأذكروكم إلى الله من الخلق

Offer Salat (prayer) as you have seen me praying.\(^2\)

Here is how you should pray, based on the Prophet’s prayer:

1) Completely perform the Wudhu’ — meaning, perform it as Allâh Almighty ordered you to perform it, for Allâh says:

> يَايُبَاهَا الْبَيْنَ يَا مَانِسِبَانِ إِذَا كَمَثَّتُ إِلَى الْصَّلَاةِ فَأَسْلَى وَجَهَّوْكُم وَأَدْيَّكُم

To the Messenger and wash you and wipe you and purify you to Allah.

O you who believe! When you intend to offer As-Salat (the

---

\(^1\) From a dissertation written by the noble Mufti of the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia, Ash-Shaikh ‘Abdul-Aziz bin ‘Abdullah bin Baz.

\(^2\) Al-Bukhari no. (631), in a Hadith related by Malik bin Huwairith, may Allâh be pleased with him.
prayer), wash your faces and your hands (forearms) up to the elbows, rub (by passing wet hands over) your heads, and (wash) your feet up to the ankles.\footnote{\textit{Al-Ma'idah} 5:6}

And the Prophet \textit{SAW} said:

\begin{quote}

\textit{‘\textbf{\lA\l\uS\l\p\a\l\u\u\m\l\i\l\b\l\u\n\u\s\l\u\m\u\l\n\l\l\u}\end{quote}

The prayer is not accepted without purification.\footnote{From \textit{Muslim}, a Hadith related by Abu Hurairah, may Allah be pleased with him.}

2) Face the \textit{Qiblah}, which is the Ka'bah (in Makkah); no matter where you are, you must turn toward it when you pray.

3) Formulate the \textit{Niyyah} (intention), intending in your heart to pray the prayer you are about to pray—whether it is obligatory or voluntary.

4) Do not utter the \textit{Niyyah} with your tongue because doing so is not legislated in Islam; rather it is an innovation, for neither the Prophet \textit{SAW} nor his Companions, may Allah be pleased with them, uttered their intention.

5) Place a \textit{Sutrah}\footnote{An \textit{obstacle or barrier} to prevent one who is walking from passing in front of the one praying, so as not to interrupt his prayer.} before you; whether one is an \textit{Imam}, or praying alone.

6) You must face the \textit{Qiblah}, an act that is one of the conditions of prayer, except in certain situations that are well known and that are clarified in the books of the scholars.

7) Make the sacred \textit{Takbir} (\textit{Takbirat-ul-Ihram}), saying, “\textit{Allâhu Akbar}”—sacred because with it one enters the sacred state of prayer. As you are saying the \textit{Takbir}, your eyes should be fixed on the place of your prostration.

8) As you are making the \textit{Takbir}, your hands should be raised to the level of either your shoulders or ears.

9) Then place your hands on your chest, placing the right arm on your left hand, wrist, and forearm, for this practice is established in the Sunnah of the Prophet \textit{SAW}.\footnote{From Ahmad, Abu Dawud, At-Tirmithi, and Ibn Majah—in a \textit{Hadith} narrated by Wa'il bin Hujr.}
10) It is Sunnah for you to recite the opening supplication:

\[
\text{Alâhumma Baa'id Bâine wa Baina Khataayâyay, Kamaa Baa'âda Bâinals-Masbrîqi wa-Magbrîbi. Allâhumma Naqqi-nee Min Khataayâyay, Kamaa Unaqqatb-Ishawbul-Akyadhu Minad-Danaas. Allâhummaghsilnee Min Khataayâyay, Bil-Maa'i, watb-Iba'ji, wal-Barad.}
\]

O Allah, distance me from my sins just as You have distanced the east from the west. O Allah, purify me of my sins as a white robe is purified of filth. O Allah, cleanse me of my sins with water, snow, and hail.\[1\]

11) You may recite the previous supplication or you may replace it with the following one:

\[
\text{Subhaanaka Allâhumma wa Bibamdika, wa Tabaaraks-asmuka, wa Ta'alaa Jadduka, wa Laa Ilaha Ghatruka.}
\]

How perfect You are, O Allah, and I praise You. Blessed is Your Name, and lofty is Your position and none has the right to be worshipped except You.\[2\]

12) It is also permissible to read other opening invocations, as long as they are authentically established in the Sunnah of the Prophet ﷺ. It is best, however, to change, reciting one opening invocation during one prayer and another invocation during another prayer; by doing so, you are more complete in your following of the Sunnah.

13) Then recite:

---

\[1\] Al-Bukhari (744), Muslim (598) — in a Hadith related by Abu Hurairah, may Allah be pleased with him.

\[2\] Related by Muslim, from the practice of ‘Umar. Sharh Muslim (4:111).
The Second Pillar: Prayer

"أَعُوذ بِنَا مِن النَّارِ الرَّمِيمِ، يَسْمِع اللَّهُ الرَّحْمَنُ الرَّحِيمُ"
A’oothu Billābi Minasb-Shaithaanir-Rajeem, Bismillābhir-Rahmaanir-Rabeem.

“I take protection in Allah from the accursed Shaitan. In the Name of Allah, the Most Beneficent, the Most Merciful.”

14) Next, recite Surat Al-Fatihah, for the Prophet ﷺ said:

لا صلاة إلا من لم يقرأ فتحة الكتاب

There is no prayer for the one who doesn’t read the Opening of the Book.[1]

15) After you finish reciting Al-Fatihah, say:

أَمِم

“Aameen”

out loud for the spoken prayers and to yourself in the quiet prayers.

16) Then recite what is easy for you from the Qur’an.

17) After Al-Fatihah, it is best to recite from the middle Mudassil Surahs in the Zuhur, ‘Asr, and ‘Ishaa’ prayers.

18) In Fejr Prayer, read the longer Surahs.

19) In the Maghrib prayer, sometimes read the longer Surahs and sometimes the short ones, so as to apply every Hadith that is related to this issue.

20) Next comes the bowing position (Ruku’).

21) As you are about to bow, raise your hands to the level of your shoulders or ears, and say, “Allaahu Akbar (Allah is the Most Great)”. In the Ruku’, make sure that your head is parallel to your back. Place your hands on your knees, separating your fingers. Reach a level of calmness and tranquility in your Ruku’.

22) While in Ruku’, say:

"سَبِيحَانَ رَبِّي الْعَظِيمِ"

[1] Al-Bukhari (756), Muslim (394) (38) — in a Hadith narrated by ‘Ubadah bin As-Samit, may Allah be pleased with him.
must be known about islam

Subhaana Rabbiiyal-Atteem.

How perfect my Lord is, the Supreme.

23) It is best to recite that phrase three or more times.

24) In addition to that phrase, it is recommended for you to also say:

Subhaanaaka Allâhumma, Rabbana wa Bihamdiha, Allâbunnagf, fir lee.

How perfect You are, O Allâh, our Lord and I praise You. O Allâh, forgive me. [1]

25) Next, one rises from the Ruku’.

26) Rise from the Ruku’, raising your hands to the level of either your shoulders or ears, saying (whether Imam or individual worshipper):

Samii’ Allâbu Limal Hamdab.

Allâh listens to those who praise Him.

27) As soon as you reach the standing position, say:

Rabbana wa Lakal-Hamdu, Hamdan Kaheeran Tayiban, Mubaarak Feeb, Mil’as-Samaawati wa Mil’al-Ardhi, wa Mil’a Ma Batinabuma wa Mil’a Maas Shi’ta Min Shay’in Ba’d.

Our Lord, for You is all praise, an abundant beautiful blessed praise. The heavens and the earth and all between them abound with Your praises and all that You will abound with Your praise. [2]

Because it is established in the Sunnah of the Prophet ﷺ, it is also good for you to continue, saying:

[1] Al-Bukhari (484), in a Hadith related by ’Aishah, may Allâh be pleased with her.

The Second Pillar: Prayer

O Possessor of praise and majesty, the truest thing a worshipper has said (of You) and we are all Your worshippers. O Allah, none can prevent what You have willed to bestow and none can bestow what You have willed to prevent, and no wealth or majesty can benefit anyone, as from You is all wealth and majesty.\(^\text{[1]}\)

28) If you are following an Imam, then say:

\[\text{Rabbana wa Lakal-Hamd}\]

Our Lord, and for You is all praise

until the end of what has preceded.

29) It is recommended for you to then place your hands on your chest, just as you did before bowing, for it is a practice that is established in the Sunnah of the Prophet \(\text{[2]}\), it is related by Wa’il bin Hujr and Sahl bin Sa’d, may Allah be pleased with them.

30) Next comes the prostration (\text{Sujud}).

31) As you are going down for \text{Sujud}, say the \text{Takbir}. When you go down, let your knees touch the ground before your hands do — if that is possible for you.

32) If doing the above is difficult for you, you may allow for your hands to precede your knees in touching the ground.

33) During the \text{Sujud}, your fingers, hands and feet should be facing the \text{Qiblah}; also, your fingers should be joined and stretched.

\(^{\text{[1]}}\) Muslim (477) (205).
34) Make sure that seven body parts are touching the ground: your forehead along with your nose (this is considered as one), your two hands, your knees, and the bottom of the toes of your feet.

35) While prostrating, say:

"Subhaana Rabbiyal-A'laa.
How Perfect my Lord is, the Most High.

36) It is Sunnah to say that phrase three times or more.

37) Along with that phrase, it is recommended to say:

"Subhaanaka Allâhumma, Rabbana wa Bihamdika, Allâhummaghfir lee.
How perfect You are, O Allâ, our Lord, and I praise You. O Allah, forgive me.[1]

38) While in Sajdah, you should make much supplication, for the Prophet ﷺ said,

"As for the bowing, glorify your Lord therein; and as for the prostration, be diligent in supplication, for it is a time when you are worthy of being answered.[2]

39) Ask your Lord for good in both this world and the Hereafter — regardless of whether you are praying an obligatory prayer or a voluntary one.

40) Distance your upper arms from your sides, your stomach from your thighs, and your thighs from your calves. And raise your elbows above the ground, for the Prophet ﷺ said:


[2] Muslim (479) (207), in a Hadith related by Ibn ‘Abbas, may Allâh be pleased with them.
Be balanced while prostrating, and let not one of you flatten and extend your arms as a dog does.[1]

41) Next, rise from the Sajdah.

42) As you are rising from Sajdah, say the Takbir. Rest your left foot on the ground and sit on it. Make your right foot stand erect, and place your hands on your thighs and knees.

43) While seated, say:

\[ رَبِّ اغْفِرْ لِيَ وَارْحَمْنِيَ وَأَهْلِيَ وَأَزْوَاجِيَ وَعَفَائيَ وَأَبْنائيَ ]

\[ Rabbiglfir lee, warbannee, wabdtinee, warzugnee, wa 'Aaftinee, ujburnee. \]

My Lord forgive me, have mercy upon me, guide me, grant me sustenance, pardon me, and console me.[2]

44) Achieve calmness in this seated position.

45) Then go down for the second Sajdah, after which you stand up for the second unit.

46) As you are going down for the second Sajdah, say the Takbir, and do in that second Sajdah what you did in the first one.

47) As you are rising from the second Sajdah, say the Takbir, and sit down for a very brief amount of time; this is called the 'Jalsatul Istirahah (the sitting of rest)”. It is recommended, and so if one does not perform it, there is no harm. During this brief seated position, there is no invocation or supplication that you should read.

48) Then stand up for the second unit, rising not with your hands, but with your knees.

49) Recite Al-Fatihah, followed by whatever is easy for you from the Qur'ân.

50) Until the second prostration, do as you did in the first unit.

51) How to sit for the Tasabhid:

[1] Al-Bukhari (722), and Muslim (893) (223), in a Hadith related by Anas, may Allâh be pleased with him.

[2] Recorded by Ahmad (1:371) Abu Dawud (850) At-Tirmithi (284, 285) Ibn Majah (898) and Al-Hakim (1:271) and he graded it Sahih, from Ibn 'Abbas, may Allâh be pleased with them.
If you are praying a prayer that comprises of two units only — such as the Fajr, Jumu’ah, and ‘Eid prayers — you will remain seated after the second prostration, with your right foot erected, your left foot rested on the ground, and your right hand placed on your right thigh. Clench all of the fingers of your right hand into the shape of a fist, except for the index finger, with which you will point indicating Taubid. It is also correct to clench only your pinkie and ring finger, while you make a ring shape using your middle finger and thumb, all the while indicating Taubid with your index finger. Both ways are established in the Sunnah of the Prophet ﷺ.

52) Because both of the previous ways are established in the Sunnah, it is best to apply each, sometimes applying the first method and sometimes applying the second one.

53) For the sitting position, place your left hand on your left thigh and knee.

54) Reciting At-Tashahhud and sending blessing upon the Prophet ﷺ:

55) Recite the Tashahhud:

اتّبِعُوهُ اللهُ وَالصَّلَواتُ وَالْإِفَادَاتُ، السَّلاَمُ عَلَيْكَ أَيُّهَا النَّبِيُّ 
وَرَحْمَةُ اللهُ وَبِرَاَيْتُهُ، السَّلاَمُ عَلَيْنَا وَعَلَيْ عِبَادِ اللهِ الصَّالِحِينَ،
أَشْهَدُ أَنْ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهَ، وَأَشْهَدُ أَنَّ مُحَمَّدًا عَبْدُهُ وَرَسُولُهُ

At-Tahiyyatu-lillaahi was-Salawaatu wat-Tayyibaatu, As-Salaamu Alaika Ayyuban-Nabiiyyu, wa Rahmatullabbi wa Barakaattehu, As-Salaamu Alainaa wa Aala Ibaadillabis-Saalibeen. Asb-badu An Ilaa Ilaalabbu, wa Asb-badu Anna Muhammadan ’Abdubu wa Rasoolubu.

Greetings to Allah, and blessings and goodness. Peace and the mercy and blessings of Allah be upon you O Prophet. Peace be upon us and all of Allah’s righteous servants. I bear witness that none has the right to be worshipped except Allah and I bear witness that Muhammad is His servant and Messenger.\(^1\)

\(^{1}\) Related by Al-Bukhari (6230), Muslim (402) (55), narrated by Ibn Mas’ud, may Allah be pleased with him.
56) Then send the blessings saying:

«اللهّم صلّ علی محمد و علی آل محمد، وَآل إبراهیم، إنّك حبید مجيد، وبارك على مُحمد و علی آل محمد، وَآل إبراهیم، إنّك حبید مجيد.»

**Allahumma Salli 'Alaa Muhammadin wa 'Alaa Aali Muhammadin, Kamaa Sallatta 'Alaa Ibrabeema wa Aali Ibrabeema, Innaka Hameedun Majeed. Wa Baarak 'Alaa Muhammadin wa 'Alaa Aali Muhammadin, Kamaa Baarakta 'Alaa Ibrabeema wa Aali Ibrabeema, Innaka Hameedun Majeed.**

O Allah, bestow Your favor upon Muhammad and the family of Muhammad, just as You bestowed Your favor upon Ibrahim and upon the family of Ibrahim. Verily, You are full of praise, Most Glorious. And send blessings upon Muhammad and upon the family of Muhammad, just as You sent blessings upon Ibrahim and upon the family of Ibrahim. Verily, You are full of praise, Most Glorious.⁴¹

57) Next, seek protection in Allah from four, saying,

«اللهّم إني أَعْوَدُكَ مِنْ عَذَابَ جَهَنَّمْ، وَمِنْ عَذَابِ الْقَبِرَةِ، وَمِنْ فِنْتَةِ السَّمَاءِ وَالْمَمَاتِ، وَمِنْ فِنْتَةِ الْمُصِيبِ الدَّخَالِ.»

**Allahumma Innee A’oodhu Bika Min ‘Atbaabi Jabannam, wa Min ‘Atbaabil-Qabr, wa Min Fitnatiil-Makyaal wa-Mamaat, wa Min Fitnatiil-Maseebah-Dc.jaal.**

O Allah, I take refuge in You from the punishment of the grave, from the torment of the Fire, from the trials and tribulations of life and death and from the evil affliction of Al-Masih Ad-Dajal.⁴²

58) Then supplicate, asking for whatever you wish, in terms of good in this life and the Hereafter. It is correct here to also supplicate

---

⁴¹ Related by Al-Bukhari (3370) and Muslim (406) (66), narrated by Ka’b bin ‘Ujrah, may Allah be pleased with him.

⁴² Related by Muslim (590) (134) from Abu Hurairah, may Allah be pleased with him.
for one's parents or for anyone else – regardless of whether it is a compulsory or voluntary prayer, for in a Hadith related by Ibn Mas'ud, may Allah be pleased with him, the Prophet ﷺ said:

"هَلْ يَسْتَجِبُ مِنَ الدِّعَاءِ أَعْجَبَهُ إِلَيْهِ، فَيُدْعَوُوْ"  
Then let him choose that supplication which pleases him most, and let him supplicate (with it).[1]

And in another wording:

"نَبِيُّ الْمَيْاَمْ عَلَيْهِمْ وَرَحْمَةُ اللَّهِ"  
Then, afterwards, let him choose to ask what he pleases.

59) Finally, turn to your right and left, each time saying:

"الْسَلَامُ عَلَيْكُمْ وَرَحْمَةُ اللَّهِ"  
As-Salaamu 'Alaikum wa Rahmatullâh.
May the peace and mercy of Allah be upon you.

A description of the three-unit and four-unit prayer:

60) If the prayer comprises of three units – such as the Maghrib prayer – or four units – such as the Zuhr, 'Asr, or 'Isba' prayers – recite the Tasbahah that is mentioned above and send blessings upon the Prophet ﷺ.

61) Then stand up, rising not with your hands, but with your knees.

62) As soon as you are standing, raise your hands to the level of your ears or shoulders, saying, “Allâhu Akbar.”

63) Then, as before, place your hands on your chest.

64) Recite only Al-Fatihab.

65) In the third and fourth units of prayer, if you sometimes recite more than Al-Fatihab, then that is also correct, for a Hadith related by Abu Sa'id, may Allah be pleased with him, indicates its that this is correct.[2]

66) In the seated position of the third unit of Maghrib or the fourth unit of Zuhr, 'Asr, or 'Isba', recite exactly those invocations that

---

you recite in the sitting position of the two-unit prayer.

67) Then turn to your right and left, each time making Taslim (i.e., saying, “As-Salaamu ‘Alaikum wa-Rahmatullah”). When you finish making your second Taslim, say, “Astagfirullâb (I seek forgiveness from Allâh)” three times.

68) Then say:

اللّهُمَّ أنتَ السلامَ وَمَلكَ السلامَ، بَارِكْتِيْنَا ذَا الجُلَالِ وَالإِكَّرَامِ
Allâhumma Antas-Salaam, wa Minkas-Salaam, Tabaaarakta Yaa Thal Jalaali wal-Ikram.

O Allâh, You are peace and from You is all peace, You have blessed us, O Possessor of majesty and honor.\(^{[1]}\)

69) Also say:

لا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ وَحْدَهُ لَا شَرِيكَ لَهُ، لَهُ الْمُكَانُ وَلَهُ الْحَمْدُ، وَهُوَ عَلَى كُلِّ شَيْءٍ قَبِيرٍ، اللَّهُمَّ لَا مَانِعٌ لَّيْماً أُغْطِبْتُ، وَلَا مُعْطِيُّ لِمَا مُنْتَهَتْ، وَلَا يَنْتَغِي ذَٰلِكَ الْجُدُدُ مِنكَ الْجُدُدُ


None has the right to be worshipped except Allâh, alone, without partner, to Him belongs all sovereignty and praise and He has power over all things. O Allâh, none can prevent what You have willed to bestow and none can bestow what You have willed to prevent, and no wealth or majesty can benefit anyone, as from You is all wealth and majesty.\(^{[2]}\)

70) Then say:

لا حَوْلَ وَلَا قُوَّةَ إِلَّا بِاللَّهِ، لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ، وَلَا تَعْبَدُ إِلَّا إِيَّاهُ، لَهُ

---

\(^{[1]}\) Related by Muslim (592) (136) from Thawban, may Allâh be pleased with him.

\(^{[2]}\) Al-Bukhari (844), Muslim (593) (137), from Al-Mughirah bin Shu’bah, may Allâh be pleased with him.
Must Be Known About Islam


There is neither might nor power except with Allâh, none has the right to be worshipped except Allâh and we worship none except Him. For Him is all favor, grace, and glorious praise. None has the right to be worshipped except Allâh and we are sincere in faith and devotion to Him although the disbelievers detest it.[1]

71) After that, say:

«سُبْحَانَ الَّهِ»

Subbaanallâh (How perfect Allâh is!) thirty-three times,

«الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ»

Al-Hamdulillâh (All praise is for Allâh) thirty-three times,

«اللَّهَ أَكْبَرَ»

Allâbu Akbar (Allâh is the Most Great) thirty-three times, completing one hundred by saying once:

«لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا الَّهُ وَحَدَّهُ لَا شَرِيكَ لَهُ، لَهُ الْمُلُوكُ، وَلَهُ الْحَمْدُ وَهُوَ عَلَيْهِ كُلُّ شَيْءٍ قَدِيرٌ»


None has the right to be worshipped except Allâh, alone, without partner, to Him belongs all sovereignty and praise and He has power over all things.[2]

[1] Muslim (593) (139) from ’Abdullah bin Az-Zubair, may Allâh be pleased with him.
[2] Muslim (597) (146) from Abu Hurairah, may Allâh be pleased with them.
72) Then recite Ayatul-Kursi.\(^1\)

73) Follow Ayatul-Kursi by reciting the last three Surahs of the Qur’an. Do so after every prayer.\(^2\)

74) Because doing so is related from the Sunnah of the Prophet ﷺ, recite the last three Surahs of the Qur’an three times each after the Fajr and Maghrib prayers.

All of the above-mentioned invocations are Sunnah and not Fardh (obligatory).

**Sunnah And Rawatib Prayers:**

75) It is legislated for every male and female Muslim to pray four units before Zuhr, and two units after it; two units after Maghrib; two units after ‘Isha’; two units before Fajr, making a total of 12 units.

76) The units referred to above are called Ar-Rawatib (regular Sunnah prayers; when he wasn’t traveling, the Prophet ﷺ would consistently perform those prayers.

77) During travel, he wouldn’t pray those units, except for the Sunnah (two units) of the Fajr prayer and the Witr prayer (odd number of units prayed either after the ‘Isha’ prayer or after the late-night voluntary prayer). The Prophet ﷺ would make sure to perform these prayers when at home and when traveling.

78) It is best to perform the Rawatib and Witr prayers at home.

79) If you pray them in the Masjid, then that is good as well, for the Prophet ﷺ said:

> أَفْضَلْ صَلاَةَ الْمَرْيَمَ فِي بُيُوتٍ إِلاَّ الْمَكْتُوبَةٍ

The best prayer of someone is to pray in his house except for the prescribed prayer.\(^3\)

80) Praying the Rawatib units can help one enter Paradise, for the

\(^{[1]}\) (Al-Baqarah 2:255) An-Nasai in Amalul-Yaum wal-Lailah (123) with an authentic chain.

\(^{[2]}\) Ahmad (4:155), Abu Dawud and Ibn Hibban in his Sahih, as mentioned in Al-Mawardi no. (2348).

\(^{[3]}\) Al-Bukhari (7290), Muslim (781) (213), in a Hadith related by Zaid bin Thabit, may Allah be pleased with him.
Prophet ﷺ said:

«من صلّى أثنان عشرة ركعتاً في يومه وليله نَطْوَعُها ؛ بَنِي الله نَبِيٌّ ﷺ في الجَنّة»

Whoever prays twelve units in a day and night, Allāh builds a house for him in Paradise.[1]

81) Four units before the ‘Asr prayer, two units before the Maghrib prayer, and two units before the ‘Isha’ prayer – it is good for you to perform these prayers because authentic Hadiths indicate that they are legislated.

[1] Muslim, in his Sahih (728) (101), in a Hadīth related by Umm Habibah, may Allāh be pleased with her.
The Prescribed Prayers And
The Number Of Their Units

| The Prescribed Prayer | Number of Units | The Ratibah
(Singular of Rawatib) Sunnah |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Zuhr Prayer</td>
<td>4 units</td>
<td>2 units before and 2 units after. It has also been said that there are four units before the Zuhr prayer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Asr Prayer</td>
<td>4 units</td>
<td>It is Sunnah to either pray 2 or 4 units before 'Asr prayer; however, they are not from the Rawatib prayers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maghrib Prayer</td>
<td>3 units</td>
<td>2 units after</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Isha' Prayer</td>
<td>4 units</td>
<td>2 units after</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fajr Prayer</td>
<td>2 units</td>
<td>2 units before</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

That Which Is Makrub (Hated or Extremely Disliked) During The Prayer[^1]

1) It is Makrub for one to turn his head or avert his gaze during prayer, and raising one’s eyes to the sky is forbidden.
2) It is Makrub to make frivolous movements or unnecessary actions during prayer.
3) While praying, it is Makrub for one to carry something that is distracting – such as something heavy – or to wear something that is distracting – such as a multi-colored shirt.
4) During prayer it is Makrub to rest one’s hands on one’s sides.

Matters That Nullify One’s Prayer

1) Speaking, even if one does so briefly.
2) Turning away from the Qiblah with one’s entire body.
3) Passing wind or doing anything that necessitates Wudhu’ or Ghusl.

[^1]: From a dissertation by Shaikh Ibn ‘Uthaimin.
4) Many and continuous unnecessary movements.
5) Laughing, even if it is a brief one.
6) On purpose, standing or sitting more than is legislated or making an extra Ruku' or Sujdah.
7) Preceding the Imam on purpose.

Rulings Related To The Prostration Of Forgetfulness During Prayer

1) If one forgets during prayer and performs an extra Ruku' or Sujdah, for example, then he makes the Taslim as he normally does, performs two prostrations for forgetfulness, and then makes Taslim again. For example, if one prays Zuhr (a 4-unit prayer), and by mistake stands up for the fifth unit, but then remembers or is reminded, he should return to the sitting position without making Takbir. He then reads the final Tashahhud, after which he makes Taslim, 2 prostrations of forgetfulness, and then Taslim again. Even if he only remembered the extra unit after finishing his prayer, he should make two prostrations and then make Taslim.

2) If one forgetfully makes Taslim before he completes his prayer, but then later remembers or is reminded of his mistake, he may continue the prayer from where he left off, as long as he remembers after a short period of time. Then when he finishes the prayer, he must make the two prostrations of forgetfulness, followed by the Taslim.

For example, one is praying the Zuhr prayer, and due to forgetfulness, makes Taslim in the third unit, ending his prayer. However, he then remembers his mistake or is reminded of it. In this case, he must perform the fourth unit, make Taslim, perform two prostrations for forgetfulness, and then make Taslim again. But if he only remembers after a long period of time, he must repeat the prayer from its beginning.

3) If one forgets to make the first Tashahhud or any of the other obligatory actions of prayer, he must perform two prostrations for forgetfulness before he makes the Taslim, and there is nothing else required from him. If he remembers before leaving the position he is in, he must perform what he forgot, and there
is nothing else required from him. And if he remembers after leaving his position but before reaching his next position in prayer, he must return to the previous position and perform what he forgot.

For example, one forgets to perform the first Tashahhud, standing without pause to the third unit of prayer. If he reaches an upright position, he doesn’t return to the Tashahhud, but rather he must perform two prostrations of forgetfulness before making Taslim. If he sits for the Tashahhud but forgets to say the Tashahhud and remembers to say it before standing, he should make the Tashahhud, complete the prayer, and there is nothing else required from him. Similarly, if he begins to stand but remembers to sit before reaching an upright position: he should return to the Tashahhud and finish his prayer. However, the people of knowledge have mentioned that he should perform two prostrations for forgetfulness, because of the extra movement he made in his prayer when he began to stand. And Allâh knows best.

4) If one is doubtful as to whether he prayed three or four units, without being surer of one over the other, he must base his prayer on certainty – which means the lower number. Before making Taslim, he must perform two prostrations for forgetfulness and then make Taslim. For example, one is praying Zuhr and in the second unit, he is not surer whether it is the second unit or the third; in fact, he is not surer regarding one over the other. He must continue to pray as if he is in the second unit, and then before making Taslim, he must perform two prostrations for forgetfulness, followed by the Taslim.

5) If one is doubtful in his prayer, not knowing for sure whether he prayed two or three units, but is surer regarding one over the other, then he must base his prayer on what he is surer of – regardless of whether it is the smaller or larger number. Then after making one Taslim, he should perform two prostrations for forgetfulness, followed by the Taslim. For example, if one is praying Zuhr, and in the second unit, he is doubtful as to whether he is in the second unit or the third, but
he is sure of being in the third. In this case, he must continue his prayer as if he is in the third unit. Then after making one Taslim, he must perform two prostrations for forgetfulness, followed by the Taslim.

If doubt creeps into his mind after he has completed his prayer, then he must ignore that doubt, only taking it into consideration when it becomes certainty. And if one doubts very often, he must disregard his doubt, for in his situation, it is a case of whispering (from the Devil).

How A Sick Person Prays

1) A sick person must perform the obligatory prayers in a standing position, even if he has to lean forward or lean on a wall or stick.

2) Nonetheless, if he is not able to stand, the sick person may pray in a seated position. In such a situation, it is best for him to pray, sitting cross-legged for the standing and bowing positions.

3) If he is not able to sit, he may pray, lying on his side – the right side is preferable – facing the Qiblab. If he is not able to face the Qiblab, he may pray as is, and his prayer is correct: he does not have to repeat it later.

4) And if he cannot pray on his side, he may pray lying down on his back, with his legs facing the Qiblab. It is best for him to slightly raise his head, so that he faces the Qiblab. If he cannot even have his legs facing the Qiblab, he may pray as is, and he doesn’t have to repeat his prayer.

5) The sick person must perform the bowing and prostration position in his prayer. If he is not able to do so, then he must make a gesture with his head for both, allowing for his head to fall lower in the prostration. If he can bow but not prostrate, he must perform the former and make a gesture for the latter. And if he is able to prostrate but not bow, he must prostrate, and gesture for the bowing position.

6) In case that one’s sickness prevents one from gesturing with one’s head for the bowing and prostration positions, then one should make a signal with one’s eyes, closing them slightly for the bowing and closing them further for the prostration. As for signaling with one’s finger as some sick people do, it is not
correct and I know of no basis in the Qur’an, the Sunnah, or the sayings of the people of knowledge for that practice.

7) If one’s sickness is so severe that one can neither signal with his head or eyes, he must pray with his heart, reciting, and intending in his heart to bow, prostrate, to stand, and to sit: “For every person is that which he intended.”

8) The sick person must pray every prayer on time, and furthermore must perform as much as he can from the obligatory elements of prayer. If it is truly difficult for him to pray every prayer in its time, he may combine the Zuhr and ‘Asr prayers, and combine the Maghrib and ‘Isha’ prayers, either by praying in the earlier time, meaning he prays ‘Asr in the time of Zuhr and ‘Isha’ in the time of Maghrib, or in the later time, delaying Zuhr until the time of ‘Asr, and Maghrib until the time of ‘Isha’. Based on what is easiest for him, he may do either. The Fajr prayer, however, may not be combined, not to the prayer that precedes it, nor to the prayer that follows it.

9) If a sick person travels abroad for treatment, he may shorten the four-unit prayers – Zuhr, ‘Asr, and ‘Isha’ – praying two units instead until he returns home,[1] regardless of whether he is abroad for a long or a short period of time.[2]

---

[1] Some of the people of knowledge hold that he may only shorten his prayer if he is abroad for four days or less; if he is abroad for a longer period of time, he must perform the prayers, always completing four units.

[2] Taken from a work written by Shaikh Muhammad bin Salih Al-Uthaimin.
The Rulings For Congregational Prayer And For The Imam[1]

First, The Congregational Prayer

1) Its Ruling: Congregational prayer is obligatory upon every (male) believer who has no excuse that prevents him from attending it. This ruling is based on the Prophet’s saying:

"أَمَّا مِنْ تَلاَثِيْنِ فِي قُرْبَيْنِ وَلَا نَذِئٍ وَلَا نَقَامٍ فَيُقَامُ صَلاَةُ الجَمَاعَةٍ إِلَّا أَشْهَدُوا عَلَىٰهُمْ السَّيْطَانُ فَعَلِيْكُمْ بِالْجَمَاعَةِ" (A man of three in a village and two in a desert and no prayer, if you find prayer, except that the Shaitan (Devil) overpower them, and you shall make them pray),

There are not three in a village or desert who do not establish the congregational prayer except that the Shaitan (Devil) overpowers them. Upon you, then, is the congregation, for indeed, the wolf eats the lone sheep.[2]

The Prophet ﷺ also said:

"وَالَّذِي فَصَلَّى يَتَّهِبَ، لَقَدْ هَمَّتُ أَنْ أَمَرْ یَجْتَبَ فَيَغْتَبْ، لَمْ َأَمْرْ ِبِالْصَّلَاةِ فَيَؤُدْنُ ْنَاهُ، ثُمَّ أَمَرْ رَجُلًا يُؤُدُّ الْعَلَامَاتِ، ثُمَّ أَخَافَتْ إِلَى ِرَجَالٍ لَيْسَهُمْ الصَّلَاةُ فَأَحَرَّقُ عَلَيْهِمْ بَيوْنَهُمْ"

By the One Who has my soul in His Hand, I resolved to order for firewood to be gathered, to order the call to prayer, and then to order a man to lead the people (in prayer). Then I would go back to the men who wouldn’t attend the prayer and burn down their houses.[3]

In another Hadith, a blind man said, “O Messenger of Allāh, I have no one to lead me to the Masjid.” The Prophet ﷺ permitted him to remain behind from the congregational prayer, but when the man turned around to leave, the Prophet ﷺ called him back and said,

---

[1] Taken from the book Minbujul-Muslim, by Abu Bakr Al-Jaza’iri
[2] Ahmad, Abu Dawud, An-Nasa’i, and Al-Hakim; it is an authentic Hadith.
“Do you hear the call to prayer?” The man said, “Yes.” The Prophet ﷺ said, “Then respond to it.”[1]

Ibn Mas‘ud, may Allâh be pleased with him, once said, “Not one of us would remain behind from the congregational prayer except for the hypocrite who was known to be a hypocrite. A (sick) man would be brought to the prayer and guided between two men until he stood in the line.”[2]

2) Its Virtues: The virtues of congregational prayer are great and so are its rewards, for the Prophet ﷺ said:

The congregational prayer surpasses the individual prayer by twenty-seven degrees.

He ﷺ also said:

The prayer of a man in congregation excels his prayer in his home or in his store by twenty-seven degrees. That is because if one of them were to perform Wudhu and perform it well, then go to the Masjid not intending other than the prayer, he would not take a step except that Allâh would raise him one rank because of that step and remove from him one sin, until he entered the Masjid. When he enters the Masjid, he

[1] Muslim
[2] Related by Muslim
continues to be in prayer as long as he awaits it. The angels pray over one of you as long as he is in the place he prayed in. They say, “O Allâh, forgive him, O Allâh have mercy on him,” as long as he remains in a state of purity.[1]

Second, Rulings Regarding The Imam

1) The Conditions Of Being Imam (The One Who Leads The Prayer): The Imam must be male, pious (meaning that he neither commits the major sins nor persists in the minor ones), and fully knowledgeable regarding the rulings of the prayer. A woman may not lead men in prayer, nor may a Fasiq (evil-doer) known for his wickedness, unless he is a feared leader. An illiterate ignorant person may not lead others unless the others are like him, for the Prophet ﷺ said:

لا تؤمنوا المرأة ولا فاجر مؤمناً إلا أن يقهره شيطان أو يخفم

The woman and the evildoer may not lead the believer unless he (the believer) is forced by the leader or fears his whip or sword. (It was reported by Ibn Majah but it is weak.)

2) Who Is More Deserving To Be Imam? The worthiest person to lead the prayer is the one who knows more from Allâh’s Book, followed by the one who is most knowledgeable in Allâh’s religion, followed by the one who is most pious, and then followed by the one who is most senior in age. The Prophet ﷺ said:

يوم القوم أقرهم لكتاب الله فإن كانوا في القدة سوأ فأعلمهم بالشدة فإن كانوا في السنة سوأ فأقدمهم هجرة فإن كانوا في الهجرة سوأ فأدركهم بينا

The one who knows more of Allâh’s Book should lead the people (in prayer). If there are more than one who are equal in their reading of the Qur’an, then the one who is most knowledgeable regarding the Sunnah. If they are equal regarding the Sunnah, then the one who emigrated first. If

[1] Related by Muslim in the chapter, “Prayer of the Traveler”: (1:478)
The Athan and Iqamah

First, The Athan

1) Its Definition: An announcement using specific words that the time of prayer has entered.

2) Its Ruling: The Athan is a communal obligation upon the inhabitants of cities and villages, for the Prophet ﷺ said:

الَّذِي يُتْبَعُ الصَّلاةَ فَلْيُتْبَعَ أَيْضًا ﻓَاحْدِكُمْ ﻛُلُّهُمْ ﺍٓوْلُهُ وَلاّ إِلَٰهَ إِلَّآ ﻋَلَيْهِ

When the (time of) prayer arrives, then one of you must call the Athan, and let the eldest among you lead the rest of you.[2]

Regarding the traveler and the nomad, it is Sunnah for them to call Athan. The Prophet ﷺ said:

إِذَا كُنتُنَّ ﰲ ﻋَمْرِكَ أَوِ بَادِيَتَكَ فَأَذِينُتُ ﰲ الصَّلاةَ فَأُنَبِّئُكُمْ بِصُوْبٍ صُوْبٍ ﰲ الْبَنَادِرَةِ، ﻓَإِذَا ﻻّيُهُ ﻷْتَبَعُ مَدَى صُوْبٍ ﺍٓوْلُهُ ﻷْنَسٍ وَلَا ﺍٓوْلُهُ إِلَّآ ﺍٓوْلُهُ ﻷٓکَ فَتْبَيْنَاءُ

If you are with your sheep or in the desert, raise your voice with the call (to prayer), for indeed, the calling voice of the Mu'aththin (one who makes Athan) is not heard by a jinn or

[1] Muslim
human but he will bear witness for him on the Day of judgement.[1]

3) Its Wording: The wording of the Athan, as the Prophet ﷺ taught Bilal, may Allah be pleased with him, is as follows:

Allâhu Akbar, Allâhu Akbar (Allâh is the Most Great, Allâh is the Most Great) – two times.

Asbâdû Al-Lââ Iâlâm Iâllâh (I bear witness that none has the right to be worshipped but Allâh) – twice.

Asbâdû Anna Muhammâdar-Râsulullâh (I bear witness that Muhammad is the Messenger of Allâh) – twice.

Haâyya ’Aâl-Sâlâb (Hasten to prayer) – twice.

Haâyya ’Aâl-Fâlâb (Hasten to success) – twice.

If it is the call to Fâjîr, the Mu’âththîn calls here, “As-Sâlâtu Khârirum-Mînâ-Nawm” (The prayer is better than sleep) – twice.

Allâbu Akbar, Allâbu Akbar.

Lâa Iâlâm Iâllâh (None has the right to be worshipped but Allâh) – once.

Second, the Iqamah

1) Its Ruling: The Iqamah is Sunnah for the five obligatory prayers, whether one is a resident or traveler. The Prophet ﷺ said:

There are not three in a village or desert who do not establish the congregational prayer except that the Shaitan (Devil) overpowers them. Upon you, then, is the congregation, for indeed, the wolf eats the lone sheep.[2]

Anas, may Allâh be pleased with him, said that Bilal was ordered to say the Athan with even-numbered phrases, and the Iqamah with


[2] Ahmad, Abu Dawud, An-Nasa’i, and Al-Hakim; it is an authentic Hadith.
odd.[1]

2) Its Wording: As in a Hadith related by ‘Abdullah bin Zaid, the wording of the Iqamah is as follows:

Allāhu Akbar, Allāhu Akbar (Allāh is the Most Great, Allāh is the Most Great) once.

Ashhadu Al-Laa Ilaa Illallāh (I bear witness that none has the right to be worshipped but Allāh) – once.

Ashhadu Anna Muhammadar-Rasoolullāh (I bear witness that Muhammad is the Messenger of Allāh) – once.

Hāyya ‘Alas-Salaab (Hasten to prayer) – once.

Hāyya ‘Alal-Falaah (Hasten to success) – once.

Qad Qaamatis-Salaat (Indeed the prayer is about to begin) – twice.

Allāhu Akbar, Allāhu Akbar – once.

Laa Ilaa Ilaillāh (None has the right to be worshipped but Allāh) – once.

Shortening The Prayer, Combining Prayers, And The Fear Prayer

1) The Meaning Of Shortening: What this means is to shorten a four-unit prayer, making it two units. As for the Maghrib and Fajr prayers, they are not shortened because the former consists of three units while the latter consists of two.

2) Its Ruling: The shortened prayer is legislated in Islam, for Allāh Almighty says:

And when you (Muslims) travel in the land, there is no sin on you if you shorten your Salat (prayer).[2]

When the Prophet ﷺ was asked about shortening the prayer, he ﷺ said:

It is charity that Allâh has bestowed upon you, so accept His charity.\footnote{Agreed upon.}

Since the Prophet \textsuperscript{6} was consistent in shortening the prayer while traveling, making it a compulsory Sunnah (Sunnat \textsuperscript{Mu’akkadah}). The Prophet \textsuperscript{6} never traveled except that he \textsuperscript{6} and his Companions, may Allâh be pleased with them, would shorten their prayers.

3) The Minimum Distance Of Travel For Shortening The Prayer: The Prophet \textsuperscript{6} did not specify a minimum distance of travel for shortening the prayer; rather, the vast majority of Companions, Tabi’\textsuperscript{in} (companions of the Prophet’s Companions), and the Imams of past generations have studied the Prophet’s travels, noting at what distance he shortened the prayer. They found that the shortest distance in which the Prophet \textsuperscript{6} shortened the prayer is forty-eight miles, which makes it the minimum distance for shortening the prayer. So, it is Sunnah for whoever travels at least that distance – on a journey that is not meant for sinning – to shorten his prayer; he may perform two units for each of the Zuhr, ‘Asr, and Isha’ prayers.

4) When Shortening The Prayer Begins And When It Ends: The traveler may begin to shorten his prayer when he leaves the dwellings of his town, and he may continue to perform shortening it until he returns to his region, no matter how long the journey is, unless he intends to remain more than four days in any given city, for he must then perform the complete prayer without shortening it. This is because his mind is at rest when he intends to remain in a specific place, so the grounds for which the shortened prayer was legislated no longer apply, the grounds being the nervousness of the traveler and his preoccupation with the duties related to his journey. However, there is another opinion as well; because when the Prophet \textsuperscript{6} stayed for twenty days in Tabuk, he always shortened his prayer.\footnote{Recorded by Ahmad in Al-Musnad.} Yet it is said that he \textsuperscript{6} did so because he didn’t intend to stay there.

5) The Shortened Prayer Applies To Travelers In General: There is no difference between the traveler who is riding or walking;
between the one traveling by camel and the one traveling by car or plane: the shortened prayer applies to them all. The exception here is the sea-voyager who (1) is always traveling and (2) has his family with him on his ship. The shortened prayer is not legislated for him; rather, he must complete the prayers because, just like an inhabitant of a given land, he is an inhabitant of his ship.

Second, Combining The Prayers:

It is permissible to combine between Zuhr and Asr and between Maghrib and 'Isha’. The exception is the Zuhr and Asr prayers on the day of 'Arafat and the Maghrib and 'Isha’ prayers on the night of Al-Muzdalifah for the one performing Hajj, for it is a Sunnah in which he has no choice: he must combine those prayers. In an authentic Hadith, a Companion of the Prophet said the following: "Indeed, he prayed Zuhr and Asr in 'Arafat with one Adhan and two Iqamahs. When he reached Al-Muzdalifah, he prayed Maghrib and 'Isha’ with one Adhan and two Iqamahs."[1]

1) How To Combine The Prayers: The traveler may combine the prayers in two ways:

i) Praying the later prayer in the earlier prayer’s time. Therefore the traveler may combine Zuhr and Asr, praying both together in the time of Zuhr, and he may combine Maghrib and 'Isha’, praying both together in the time of Maghrib.

ii) Praying the earlier prayer in the later prayer’s time: The traveler may combine Zuhr and Asr, praying both together in the time of Asr, and combine Maghrib and 'Isha’, praying both together in the time of 'Isha’. It is related that the Prophet delayed the prayer in Tabuk, coming out and praying Zuhr and Asr together. Then he prayed Maghrib and 'Isha’ together while camping at Tabuk.[2]

If it is raining, it is extremely cold, or the winds are severe, and if it is difficult for people to return to the Masjid for 'Isha’, they may combine the Maghrib and 'Isha’ prayer in the Masjid. On one night when it was raining profusely, the Prophet combined the Maghrib and 'Isha’ prayers.[3]

[3] Related by Al-Bukhari
Similarly, the sick person may combine both the two afternoon and the two night prayers if it is difficult for him to perform each prayer in its time – for the basis upon which combining is legislated is hardship. So, whenever there is hardship, it is permissible to combine. Even when not traveling, a Muslim may face severe trials, such as fear for himself, his family, or his wealth: in all of those instances he may combine. It has authentically been related from the Prophet ﷺ that he once combined when at home, and not because of rain. Ibn ‘Abbas, may Allâh be pleased with him, said, “Indeed the Prophet ﷺ prayed seven and eight in Al-Madinah: Zuhr, ‘Asr, Maghrib, and ‘Isha’.”[1]

As Ibn ‘Abbas said, it was perhaps to avoid creating hardship for his nation. One may perform it by delaying Zuhr and advancing ‘Asr to its earliest time, and by delaying Maghrib and advancing ‘Isha’ to its earliest time, this is when two of the prayer times meet.

**Third, The Fear Prayer:**

1) **Its Legislation:** The fear prayer is legislated by the following verse:

> وَإِذَا كَتَبْتُ فِيهِمْ فَأَقْبَلْتُ لَهُمْ السَّلَتَةَ فَلَعْمَ طَالِبَةَ بِنَبَتٍ مَّعَكَ َوَلْيَأْخُذُوا أَسْلَهُمْنَ وَإِذَا سَجَدُوا فَلْيَكُونُوا مِنْ وَأَلْسُنِّمِ وَأَنْتَ طَالِبٌ أَخْرَقِ بِالْبَيَانِ َلَّا تُصَلُّوا مَمَّا لَيْلَحُوا جَذَّرَهُمُّ وَلْيَأْخُذُوا أَسْلَهُمْنَ ُ

When you (O Muhammad ﷺ) are among them, and lead them in As-Salat (the prayer), let one party of them stand up [in Salat (prayer)] with you, taking their arms with them; when they finish their prostrations, let them take their positions in the rear and let the other party come up which has not yet prayed, and let them pray with you, taking all the precautions and bearing arms.[2]

2) **The Description Of The Fear Prayer During Travel:** There are different forms of the Fear Prayer that have been related, indicating that it may be performed in a state of fear, be it strong or weak. The most famous of its forms is during battle while traveling. The Imam

---

[1] Agreed upon
should divide his army into two groups, one group facing the enemy and the second group lining up behind him, praying one unit behind him. In the second unit, the Imam should remain standing while those behind him pray their second unit and make Taslim. Then they should go and stand in the place of the second group, who come and pray one unit behind the Imam. The Imam should remain in a seated position, while the second group finishes their second unit. Then, as their Imam, they should make Taslim with them following him.

This form is supported by the Hadith of Sahl bin Abu Hathamah: “One group lined up with the Prophet while a second group faced the enemy. He prayed one unit with the group that was with him, and then he remained in the standing position as they completed (the second unit) for themselves. Then they went to face the enemy. The second group came, and the Prophet prayed the unit that remained with them; then he remained seated, while they finished (their second unit) for themselves. Then he made Taslim for them.”

3) The Fear Prayer When At Home: If a battle takes place in one’s own city where prayer is not shortened, the first group prays two units with the Imam and two units by themselves. After the second unit, the Imam remains in a standing position. The second group comes and prays two units behind the Imam, who then remains seated, waiting for them to finish their last two units by themselves, after which he makes Taslim with them.\(^1\)

4) When It Is Not Possible To Divide The Army Because The Fighting Is Fierce: If the fighting is fierce and it is not possible to divide the army, then everyone should pray individually – in any situation that they are in: walking or riding, facing the Qiblah or not facing the Qiblah, going from one position to the next by making gestures. Allâh Almighty says:

\[
\text{And if you fear (an enemy), perform Salat (prayer) on foot or riding,}^{[2]}
\]

\[^{[1]}\text{Related by Muslim}\]

\[^{[2]}\text{(Al-Baqirah 2:239)}\]
And the Prophet ﷺ said:

"فَإِنَّكُنَّا أُكْبَرْنَا مِنْ ذَلِكَ فَلْيَصْلُوا قِيَامًا وَرَكَبًا"

And if they are more than that, then let them pray standing or riding.[1]

“And if they are more than that” means, “If fear increases, the two armies clash, and the Muslim army is mixed in the enemy’s army.”

5) When Chasing The Enemy Or When Fleeing From The Enemy:
When one is chasing the enemy, fearing that he will get away, or when one is being chased by the enemy, fearing that he will catch up with him, he may pray in any way that he can – walking, running, facing or not facing the Qiblah. This applies to all who fear being attacked by man, animal, or otherwise. The way he performs the Fear Prayer is based on his situation. Allâh Almighty says:

"وَإِنْ خَفْتُمْ وَقَدْ أَخَذْتُمُوهُ"[2]

And if you fear (an enemy), perform Salat (prayer) on foot or riding.

When the Prophet ﷺ sent ‘Abdullah bin Unais, may Allâh be pleased with him, to seek out Al-Huthali, this situation occurred. ‘Abdullah later said, “When I feared that between him and I was what would make me delay the prayer, I continued to walk, praying by making gestures toward him. And when I got close to him...”[3]
Al Jumu‘ab (The Friday) Prayer

The Virtue Of Friday

Friday is a blessed day; indeed, it is the best day of this world, the best day of the week. Because Allah Almighty gave it such an important status, it should be honored. It is a day in which we should perform many good deeds, avoiding all evil ones. It is a day in which we should send many prayers upon the Prophet ﷺ. Abu Hurairah, may Allah be pleased with him, related that the Prophet ﷺ said:

*خَبَرَ يَوْمَ ظَلَّةَ عَلَىِّ السُّمَّانِ، يَوْمَ الْجُمُعةِ، فِيهِ خَلَقَ أَدَمَ، وَفِيهِ أَدْخِلَ الْجَنَّةَ، وَفِيهِ أَخْرَجَ بِهَا، وَلَا تُقُومَ السَّاعَةَ إِلَّا فِي يَوْمِ الْجُمُعةِ*

The best day that the sun has risen upon is Friday; in it Adam was created, and during it he was made to enter Paradise, and on it he left Paradise. And the Hour will not arrive except on Friday.[1]

In a Hadith related by Abu Lubabah Al-Badri, may Allah be pleased with him, the Prophet ﷺ said:

*سَبْعَ الأَيَامِ يَوْمُ الْجُمُعةِ، وَأَكْثَرُهَا عِنْدَ اللَّهِ نَعَالَى، مِنْ يَوْمِ الْوُحُذِّ، وَيَوْمِ الأَضْحَكِ...*

The master of all days is Friday, and it is the greatest day with Allah, (greater) than the day of Al-Fitr and the day of Al-Adha.[2]

In Hadith related by Abu Hurairah, may Allah be pleased with him, the Messenger of Allah ﷺ said:

*مَنْ أَغْتَسَلَ يَوْمَ الْجُمُعةِ عَشْرَ الْجَنَّةِ، مَنْ رَاحَ فِي السَّاعَةِ الأَوَّلَى، فَكَأَنَّا قُرِّبْنا بَدَنَّهُ، وَمَنْ رَاحَ فِي السَّاعَةِ الثانِيَةَ، فَكَأَنَّا قُرِّبْنا بِبَقِّرَةً...*

[1] Related by Muslim; this narration is based on his wording. It is also related by Ahmad and Ar-Tirmithi.

What Must Be Known About Islam

Whoever performs Ghusl on Friday, the Ghusl for sexual impurity, and then goes in the first hour (to the Friday prayer), it is as if he sacrificed a camel; whoever goes in the second hour, it is as if he sacrificed a cow; whoever goes in the third hour, it is as if he sacrificed a horned male sheep; whoever goes in the fourth hour, it is as if he sacrificed a chicken; whoever goes in the fifth hour, it is as if he sacrificed an egg. And when the Imam comes out, the angels attend, listening to the remembrance.

In yet another Hadith, both Abu Sa‘id and Abu Hurairah, may Allah be pleased with them, related that the Prophet said,

"Indeed there is an hour on Friday: no Muslim worshipper finds it, asking Allah good during it, except that He gives that thing to him. And that hour is after Al-Asr."

Its Ruling

The Jumu‘ah (Friday) prayer is obligatory based on this verse:

O you who believe (Muslims)! When the call is proclaimed for the Salat (prayer) on the day of Friday Jumu‘ah prayer, come to the remembrance of Allah Jumu‘ah religious talk (Khutbah and Salat (prayer)] and leave off business (and every

---

[1] Malik and Al-Bukhari; the wording is from the latter.
[2] Related by Ahmad. Al-Iraqi declared it to be authentic
other thing).\footnote{Al Jumu‘ah 62:9}

Based on this saying of the Messenger of Allah ﷺ:

> أَمْرُ أُمُّيَّةَ أَكْبَرَ عَنْ وَذُعُيَّةٍ جُمَعَةٍ، أَوْ أَمْرُ أُمُّيَّةٍ عَلَى قُلُوبِهِمْ،

> طَيْبَ الصَّحَابَةِ مِنَ الْمَلَكِينَ

People should desist from abandoning Friday prayers, or indeed Allah will seal their hearts, and they will become from the heedless ones.

The Prophet ﷺ said:

> جَمَعَةٌ وَجَبَتْ عَلَى كُلٍّ مُسْلِمٍ فِي جَمَاعَةٍ، إِلاَّ أَرْبَعَةٌ: عَنْبَةُ مَلَكُوكَ، أَوْ أَمْرَأَةٌ، أَوْ صَبِيبٌ، أَوْ مَريضٌ

The Jumu‘ah (prayer) is an obligatory right upon every Muslim in a community, except for four: an owned slave, a woman, a child, and a sick person.\footnote{Related by Abu Dawud from Tariq bin Shihab, who never heard anything from the Prophet ﷺ.}

**The Manners And Necessary Actions Of Friday Prayer**

1) Everyone who attends the prayer must first perform Ghusl; the Prophet ﷺ said:

> ﻓَعَلَّلَ الْجَمَعَةَ وَجَبَتْ عَلَى كُلٍّ مُسْلِمٍ فِي جَمَاعَةٍ

The shower of Jumu‘ah is obligatory upon every adult.\footnote{Agreed upon.}

2) One (male) should wear a clean garment and apply perfume, for the Prophet ﷺ said:

> عَلَى كُلِّ مَسْلِمٍ ﻓَعَلَّلَ الْجَمَعَةَ بِوَيْمَ الْجَمَعَةِ، وَأَنْبِذُ مِنْ صَالِحِ يَبِيهِ، وَإِنْ كَانَ لَهُ طَيِّبٌ مِنْ مَيْتِهِ

Upon every Muslim is a shower on Friday; he wears from his best garments, and if he has perfume, he should apply it on himself.\footnote{Recorded by Ahmad and Abu Dawud and its basis is in the Two Sahibs.}
3) One should make an effort to arrive early for the prayer, even earlier than its time begins, for the Prophet ﷺ said:

Whoever performs Ghusl on Friday, the Ghusl for sexual impurity, and then goes in the first hour (to the Friday prayer), it is as if he sacrificed a camel; whoever goes in the second hour, it is as if he sacrificed a cow; whoever goes in the third hour, it is as if he sacrificed a horned male sheep; whoever goes in the fourth hour, it is as if he sacrificed a chicken; whoever goes in the fifth hour, it is as if he sacrificed an egg. And when the Imam comes out, the angels attend, listening to the remembrance.\(^{[1]}\)

4) When one enters the Masjid for the Friday prayer, one should pray as much voluntary prayers as are easy for him. The Prophet ﷺ said:

When a man performs Ghusl on Friday, purifies himself as much as he is able, applies some of his oils or applies the perfume of his house, then goes to the Masjid, not separating two (worshippers), then prays what is written for him, then

\(^{[1]}\) Recorded by Malik, with an authentic chain of narration, and Al-Bukhari reported it with a chain to Malik (1:212).
listens to the Imam when he speaks – he will be forgiven from one Jumu‘ah to the next, so long as he does not perpetrate the major sins.\footnote{Al-Bukhari.}

5) When the Imam comes out to deliver the Khutbah (Friday sermon), one must avoid talking, making frivolous movements, or playing with pebbles and the like. So important it is to remain quiet that the Prophet said:

إذا قلت لصاحبك يوم الجمعة وإمام يخطب: انصت فكذبت

When you say to your companion, “pay attention” as the Imam is delivering the Khutbah, then you have indeed spoken nonsense.\footnote{Muslim.}

Again, regarding the Khutbah on Friday, the Prophet also said:

من سأ الحديث فقد نعوت، ومن لعنا فلا جماعة له

Whoever touches pebbles, then he has perpetrated nonsense; whoever perpetrates nonsense, then there is no Jumu‘ah for him.\footnote{Abu Dawud.}

6) If one enters the Masjid as the Imam is delivering Khutbah, then he should perform two brief units upon entering the Masjid. The Prophet said:

إذا دخل أحدكم يوم الجمعة والإمام يخطب فعليكم ركعتين

If one of you enters on Friday as the Imam is delivering his Khutbah, then let him perform two units (of prayer), and let him perform them quickly.\footnote{Muslim.}

7) It is disliked to walk over the necks of those who are seated or to separate two people who are seated together. When the Prophet saw a man walking over the necks of people, he said:

جليس فقد اذنت

Sit, for indeed you have caused harm.\[1\]

He also said:

وَلَا تَفْرَدُوْا بِنَفْسِكُمْ

And two people (seated together) should not be separated.

8) As soon as the second call to Friday prayer is made, it is forbidden to buy and sell; indeed, Allah Almighty says:

بَشَّامِ يَدِينَ وَلَا يَوْدِيَ إِلَى الْصَّلَاةِ مِنْ يَوْمِ الْجُمُعَةِ قَاتِعًا إِلَى ذِيْكَ

O you who believe! When the call is proclaimed for the Salat (prayer) on the day of Friday, Jumu’ab prayer), come to the remembrance of Allah Jumu’ab religious talk (Khutbah) and Salat (prayer)] and leave off business (and every other thing).\[2\]

9) It is recommended to recite Surat Al-Kahf on Thursday night or during the day of Friday. The following saying is related from the Prophet ﷺ:

رَأَىِّ الْجُمُعَةِ أَضِاءَةَ الْيَوْمِ وَلِيَّةَ الْجُمُعَةِ

Whoever recites Surat Al-Kahf on Friday, it will furnish light for him between the two Fridays.\[3\]

Our pious predecessors would assiduously apply this Hadith.

10) On Friday, one should send many blessings upon the Prophet ﷺ, for he said:

أَفْتَقِوا عَلَيْ مِنَ الصَّلَاةِ يَوْمَ الْجُمُعَةِ وَلِيَّةَ الْجُمُعَةِ، قَمَّنْ فَعَلَ ذَلِكَ

Increase sending blessings upon me on Friday and the night (before) Friday; whoever does that, I will be his witness and

\[1\] Abu Dawud.

\[2\] (Al-Jumu’ab 62:9).

\[3\] Recorded by Al-Hakim who graded it Sahih.
intercessor on the Day of Judgement.\(^1\)

11) One should supplicate much on Friday, for on that day there is an hour when supplications are answered. Whoever’s supplication corresponds to that hour, Allâh will answer him and give him what he asked. The Prophet ﷺ said:

«إن فِي يَوْم الْجُمَآعَةِ نَسَٰعَةً لَّا يُوَافِقُهَا عُبَدٌ مُّسَلِّمٌ يَسْأَلُ اللَّهَ عَزَّ»

Indeed there is an hour on Friday: no Muslim worshipper finds it, asking Allâh good during it, except that He gives that thing to him.\(^2\)

That hour has been related to be the time between the Imam coming out and the time when the Friday prayer is finished; it is also said to be after Al-Asr.

Conditions For Its Validity

1) One must be living in a city or village, because the Jumu'ah prayer is not correct in the desert nor is it correct to perform when one is traveling. During the life of the Prophet ﷺ, Jumu'ah was only performed in cities, towns, and villages; the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ didn’t order the inhabitants of the desert to perform it. Despite his many travels, it has not been authentically established that the Prophet ﷺ ever performed the Friday prayer when traveling.

2) Jumu'ah is only correct and acceptable inside a Masjid and in the courtyards of Masjids, so that Muslims are not harmed by heat or cold or rain.

3) The Jumu'ah prayer must include a Khutbah; indeed, Jumu'ah was legislated only for the Khutbah.

4) Jumu'ah is not obligatory upon one who lives far from any city in which Jumu'ah prayer is held. The meaning of far is more than three miles because the Prophet ﷺ said:

«الْجُمَآعَةَ عَلَى مَنْ سَبَعَ النَّانِئَ»

\(^1\) Related by Al-Baihaqi with a Hasan chain
\(^2\) Muslim
Al Jumu‘ah is upon he who hears the call.[1]

5) If one is late but arrives in time for the second unit, he should only perform an additional unit after the Imam makes Taslim and that is enough for him. This is because the Prophet ﷺ said:

«من أدرك من الصلاة رفعته، فقد أدركها كلها»

Whoever catches the prayer, being able to perform at least one unit, then he has caught the entire prayer.[2]

But as for one who catches the prayer, being able to perform less than one unit, such as one who arrives at the prayer when the Imam is making the final prostrations, then he should make an intention for praying Zubr, and not Jumu‘ah, and then complete the four units after the Imam makes Taslim.

6) How is Jumu‘ah performed? After midday, the Imam should come out, ascend the Minbar, give greetings of peace to the people, and then sit down. Then the Mu’aththin should call the Athan, and when he is finished, the Imam stands and delivers a Khutbah, beginning by praising Allâh and mentioning the two testimonies of faith. Next, he should send blessings and salutations upon the Prophet ﷺ. Then he should admonish the people and remind them, raising his voice while doing so. He should order by Allâh and His Messenger’s commands and forbid by their prohibitions.

He should encourage people to do good, reminding them of Allâh’s reward and warn them against perpetrating evil, reminding them of Allâh’s punishment. Then he should sit down briefly before delivering the second sermon. Continuing into the second Khutbah, he should praise Allâh and then continue in the same tone of voice – the voice of a man warning of an approaching army. Then without prolonging his speech, he should finish it off and then descend. Next, the Mu’aththin calls the Iqamah and the Imam leads the people in two units of prayer, reading out loud in both units. After reciting Al-Fatihah, it is Sunnah in the first unit to recite Surat Al-A‘la and in the second unit Al-Ghashiyah, or Surabs similar in length.

---

[1] Abu Dawud and Ad-Daraqutni, but the Hadith is weak.
[2] Agreed upon
Miscellaneous Prayers

Al-Witr Prayer

Its Ruling And Definition: Al-Witr is a compulsory Sunnah; a Muslim should never abandon it. The Witr is one unit of prayer that is performed after the last voluntary prayer performed after the 'Isha’ prayer. The Messenger of Allah ﷺ said:

صلاة الليل منه منبه، فإذا حنن أحدكم الصبح صلى ركعتاً واجدنة نورَ له ما قد صلِّي

The night prayer is two units at a time; if one of you fears that the morning is about to arrive, he should pray one unit, making the number he prayed odd.[1]

What Sunnah Precedes Al-Witr: Before performing the Witr prayer, it is Sunnah to pray two units or more and then pray the Witr, for this practice is authentically related from the Prophet ﷺ in the Sahibs.

The Time For Witr: Witr may be performed from after the 'Isha’ prayer until just before Fajr; performing it at the end of the night is better than performing it at the beginning of it, except for the one who is afraid that he won’t wake up at the end of the night to perform it. The Prophet ﷺ said:

من ظن منكم أن لا يستيقظ آخر الليل فليلد أو له ومن ظن منكم أنه يستيقظ آخره فليلد آخره فإن صلاة آخر الليل محضورة وهي أفضل

Whoever among you thinks that he will not wake up at the end of the night, then let him perform Al-Witr in its beginning. And whoever among you thinks that he will wake up at the end of the night, then let him perform the Witr at the end of it. Indeed, the prayer at the end of the night is attended and it is better.[2]

The meaning of “attended” is that the angels attend it.

[1] Al-Bukhari
[2] Ahmad, and the wording is his. It is also related in meaning by Muslim.
Sleeping Until The Morning Without Having Performed Al-Witr:
When a Muslim sleeps without performing Al-Witr, and when he doesn't wake up until the morning, he should make up for it, praying it before the Zuhr prayer. The Prophet ﷺ said:

من نام عن وَتَّوَه أو نسيته، فليضمه إذا ذكره

Whoever sleeps, leaving the Witr, or whoever forgets it, let him pray it when he remembers.\(^1\)

In case that one forgets it, he should perform it with an even number in the morning; for example, if he habitually performs Witr with three units, he should perform it with four.

Recitation In Al-Witr: It is recommended to recite Al-A'la and Al-Kafirun in the two units before Al-Witr, and then in the unit of Al-Witr to recite the three last Surahs of the Qur'an after Al-Fatiha;\(^2\) however, this should be done only sometimes. For the most part, one should read only Surah Al-Ikhlas after Al-Fatiha.

It Is Disliked To Perform Al-Witr More Than Once: In a single night, it is disliked to perform more than one Witr, for the Prophet ﷺ said:

لا وَتَرَانِ بَلَآئِهَا

There are no two Witrms in one night.\(^3\)

The Sunnah Of Fajr

Its Ruling: Like the Witr, the Sunnah prayer (two units) before Al-Fajr is a compulsory Sunnah, for it is the first prayer of a Muslim during the day, while the Witr is the last prayer of the Muslim at night. The Prophet ﷺ further stressed the importance of this Sunnah prayer by performing it consistently, never leaving it. The Prophet ﷺ encouraged Muslims to perform it, saying:

زُكِّيَنا النَّجْر حَيْبًا من الدُّنْيَا وَمَا فِيهَا

The two units of Fajr are better than the world and all that is in it.\(^4\)

\(^{1}\) Abu Dawud, and the Hadith is authentic
\(^{2}\) Ahmad, Abu Dawud, and An-Nasa'i, with a Hasan chain
\(^{3}\) At-Tirmithi, who said it is Hasan.
\(^{4}\) Muslim
He also said:

لا تدعوا زكُّمَيْيَ الْفَجْرِ وَإِن طَارَ تَكُومُ الحَيْلُ»

Do not abandon the two units of Fajr even if you are being chased by horses.[1]

When The Sunnah Prayer Of Fajr Is Performed: It is performed in the time between dawn and the actual Fajr prayer. Whoever sleeps until the sun rises, or forgets to pray it, then he should perform it when he remembers, unless midday arrives, in which case one should not perform it. The Prophet said:

منَّ أَمَّ مِنْ تُصَلِّ زَكُّمَيْيَ الْفَجْرِ حَتَّى نُقَلِّي إِلَىٰ هُدُمٍ فَأَصْلَّلْهُمَا»

Whoever doesn’t pray the two units of Fajr until the sun rises should then perform them.[2]

During days of battle, the Prophet and his Companions once slept until the sun had risen; they moved a little, leaving their place, and then the Prophet ordered Bilal to call the Athan for prayer. He then prayed two units before the Fajr prayer, after which the Iqamah was called and he prayed Fajr.[3]

How The Two Sunnah Units Of Fajr Are Performed: The Sunnah of Fajr consists of two light units; after reading Al-Fatihah in each unit, one should recite Surat Al-Kafirun in the first unit and Al-Ikhlas in the second unit, reading both units quietly. If one reads only Al-Fatihah in each unit, then that is sufficient for him. ‘Aishah, may Allâh be pleased with her, said, “The messenger of Allâh would pray two units before the early morning, and he would perform them so lightly that I doubted whether he even recited the Opening of the Book or not.”[4] She also said, “In the two units of Fajr, the Messenger of Allâh used to read ‘Qul Yaa Ayyubal-Kaafiroon’ and ‘Qul Huwawallahu Abad,” and he would be satisfied with them.”[5]

---

[1] Ahmad and Abu Dawud
Sometimes in the first unit he would recite:

\[
\text{وَعَلَىٰ رَأْسِ الْعَبْدِ مَا دَامَ فِي صَلَايَهُ}
\]

Say (O Muslims), “We believe in Allāh and that which has been sent down to us...”[1]

And in the second unit:

\[
\text{مَا أَذْنَ بِنَعْمَةٍ فِي شَيْئِينَ أَفْضَلُ مِنْ رَكَعَتَيْنِ يُصَلُّ هُمَا، وَإِنَّ الْيَبْرَكَ النَّبِيُّ}
\]

Say (O Muhammad): “O People of the Scripture (Jews and Christians): Come to a word that is just between us and you...”[2]

And sometimes he would recite:

\[
\text{عَلَىٰ نَفْسِكَ بِكِتَابِ الْمُسْتَقِيمِ}
\]

We believe in Allāh, and bear witness that we are Muslims.[3]

Voluntary Prayers In General

Their Superiority: There are many great virtues attached to voluntary prayers. The Prophet ﷺ said:

\[
\text{مَا أَذْنَ بِنَعْمَةٍ فِي شَيْئِينَ أَفْضَلُ مِنْ رَكَعَتَيْنِ يُصَلُّ هُمَا، وَإِنَّ الْيَبْرَكَ النَّبِيُّ}
\]

The best thing in which Allāh listens to His worshipper are two units that he prays, for indeed good is showered over his head as long as he is in his prayer.[4]

When a Companion asked the Prophet ﷺ for his companionship in Paradise, the Prophet ﷺ said:

\[
\text{أَعْفَنَى عَلَىٰ نَفْسِكَ بِكِتَابِ الْمُسْتَقِيمِ}
\]

Help me to help you by performing a lot of prostrations.[5]

The Wisdom Behind The Voluntary Prayers: The voluntary prayer

[1] (Al-Baqarah 2:136)
[2] (Aal 'Imran 3:64)
[5] Muslim
makes up for obligatory prayers if they are deficient. The Messengers of Allâh ﷺ said:

Indeed, the first deed for which people will be held accountable on the Day of Judgement is the prayer. Our Lord says to the angels – and He is more knowledgeable thereof, “Look at the prayer of my servant – did he complete it or did he leave it deficient?” If it is complete, then it is written for him as complete. And if it is deficient...

The Hadith goes on to mention that if the obligatory prayers are deficient, then the voluntary prayers can make up for them.

The Two 'Eid Prayers

Their Rulings And Timings: The two 'Eid Prayers – Al-Fitr and Al-Adhha – are Sunnahs that are compulsory like obligations. Allâh ordered Muslims to perform this prayer when He said:

Verily, We have granted you (O Muhammad) Al-Kawthar (a river in Paradise) therefore turn in prayer to your Lord and sacrifice (to Him only).

And Allâh Almighty made the success of the believer conditional upon it in this verse:

Indeed whosoever purifies himself shall achieve success. And remembers the Name of his Lord, and prays...

The Prophet ﷺ always prayed the two 'Eid prayers and he ordered

[1] Indeed, some of the people of knowledge have said that the two 'Eid prayers are obligatory upon the same people as those that the Jumu'ah prayer is obligatory upon, and that it is recommended for women.

[2] (Al-Kawthar 108:1,2)

[3] (Al-’Ara 87:14,15)
others to do so as well; he even ordered women and children to come out and attend. The 'Eid prayer is one of the religious practices of Islam, one of its outward aspects through which faith and piety are manifest.

**The Time Of The ‘Eid Prayer:** When the sun rises the length of a spear, Muslims should perform the ‘Eid prayer; this means that it can be performed fifteen minutes after the sun rises until midday. It is best to perform Al-Adhha at its earliest time, allowing people to slaughter their sacrifices. And it is best to delay the Fitr prayer, allowing people extra time to pay their Fitr charity, because that is what the Prophet ﷺ did. Jundub, may Allah be pleased with him, said, “The Prophet ﷺ would pray the Fitr when the sun was up the length of two spears and Al-Adhha when the sun was up the length of a single spear.”[1]

**Manners Related To The ‘Eid Prayer:**

1) One should perform Ghusl, apply perfume, and wear beautiful clothing. Anas, may Allah be pleased with him, said, “For the two ‘Eids, the Messenger of Allah ﷺ ordered us to wear the best that we could find, to wear perfume with the best we could find, and to sacrifice with the most expensive that we could find.”[2] “And the Messenger of Allah ﷺ used to wear a stripped robe every ‘Eid.”[3]

2) Before going to the ‘Eidul-Fitr prayer, one should eat; and after the ‘Eidul-Adhha prayer, one should eat from the sacrifice, rulings about that are based on the following saying of Buraidah, may Allah be pleased with him, “The Prophet ﷺ wouldn’t leave early in the morning on the day of Al-Fitr until he ate, and he wouldn’t eat on the day of Al-Adhha until he returned, and then he would eat from his sacrifice.”[4]

3) One should say the Takbir on the nights before both ‘Eids, and for Adhha, one should continue to do so until the end of the days of

---

[2] Related by Al-Hakim, and there is no harm in its chain.
[3] Related by Ash-Shafi‘i, and there is no harm in its chain due to supporting narrators.
[4] Related by Tirmithi and others, and declared to be authentic by Ibn Al-Qattan.
**Tasbriq** – when the sun sets on the thirteenth (of Thul-Hijjah). And one should continue to say the *Takbir* on *Al-Fitr* until the *Imam* comes out for the *Eid* prayer. The wording of this special *Takbir* is as follows:

“Allâhu Akbar, Allâhu Akbar (Allâh is the Most Great, Allâh is the Most Great). Laa Ilaaha Illalâh (None has the right to be worshipped but Allâh). Allâhu Akbar, Allâhu Akbar (Allâh is the Most Great, Allâh is the Most Great), Wa lillâbi-‘Hamd (And to Allâh belongs all praise).”

It especially becomes significant to say the *Takbir* when one leaves for the place of prayer, and after the obligatory prayers.

Also, in the days of *Tasbriq*, based on Allâh’s saying:

And remember Allâh during the appointed Days.[1]

And:

And remembers the Name of his Lord, and prays.[2]

And:

That you may exalt Allâh for His guidance to you.[3]

4) One should go to the *Eid* prayer, taking one route, and return, taking another, for that is what the Prophet ﷺ did. Jabir, may Allâh be pleased with him, said, “On the day of *Eid*, the Prophet ﷺ would take different routes.”[4]

5) The *Eid* prayers should be performed in open areas unless rain or something similar prevents that from happening, in which case they may be performed in a *Masjid*, as has been related in the *Sahîbs*.

6) One should congratulate his brother Muslim, saying, “May Allâh

[1] *(Al-Baqarah 2:203)*
[4] Al-Bukhari
What Must Be Known About Islam

accept from me and you.” When the Companions would meet one another on the day of ‘Eid, they would say, “May Allāh accept from us and from you.”[1]

7) There is no harm on these days to eat and drink abundantly and to play those games or sports that are permissible in Islam. On the day of ‘Eidul-Adhha, the Prophet ﷺ said:

أيام التشريق أيام أكل وشرب وذكر الله عز وجل

The days of Tasbriq are days for eating and drinking and remembering Allāh.[2]

Anas, may Allāh be pleased with him, said, “When the Prophet ﷺ came to Al-Madinah, its inhabitants had two days that they would play in. The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said,

قد أبدلناكم الله تعالى إيماما خيرًا منهما، يأكلون ويلبسون ويلعبون الأصحى

Indeed, Allāh Almighty has replaced those two days with that which is better than them: the day of Al-Fitr and the day of Al-Adhba.”[3]

On the day of ‘Eid, Abu Bakr, may Allāh be pleased with him, scolded two girls for reciting poetry in the house of ‘Aishah, and the Prophet ﷺ said:

يا أبا بكر إن لكل يوم عيد، وإن اليوم عيدنا

O Abu Bakr, indeed every people have an ‘Eid (festival holiday), and indeed today is our ‘Eid.[4]

How It Is Performed: People go out to the place of the ‘Eid prayer, declaring Allāh’s Greatness. When the sun rises a few meters, the Imam stands and leads the people in a prayer of two units that has neither Athan nor Iqamah. In the first unit, he makes the Takbir (saying, “Allāhu Akbar”) seven times with the opening Takbir. The people follow him, making the Takbir for each of his Takbirs. Then he recites Surat Al-Fatihah, followed by Al-A’la out loud. In the

[1] Recorded by Ahmad with a good (Ja’Iiyid) chain of narration.
[2] Muslim
[4] Al-Bukhari
second unit, he should make Takbir six times with the Takbir of standing up. After reading Al-Fatihah, he should recite either Surat Al-Ghashiyah or Wash-Shamsi waad-Dhubaba. Then after making the final Taslim, he should rise and give a sermon to the people, dividing it into two by sitting for a brief period of time during it. He should admonish, advise, and remind the people, interposing Takbirs during the sermon. He should open his sermon by praising and extolling Allah, and if it is ‘Eidul-Fitr, he should advise people to pay the Fitr charity, clarifying for them some of its rulings. And if it is ‘Eidul-Adhha, he should encourage people to follow the Sunnah of the sacrifice (Udhhiyah), clarifying the minimum age of the animal for it to be correct. When he finishes his sermon, he and the people leave, since there is neither a Sunnah prayer before it or after it. The exception is the person who comes late and misses the ‘Eid prayer, for he should pray four units. Ibn Mas‘ud, may Allah be pleased with him, said, “Whoever misses the ‘Eid prayer, then let him pray four, but as for him who catches a portion of the prayer with the Imam, even if it is only the Tasbahbud, he should stand up after the Imam makes Taslim and perform two units of prayer...”[1]

**The Eclipse Prayer**

**Its Ruling And Time:** The Eclipse Prayer is a compulsory Sunnah for both men and women. The Prophet ﷺ ordered Muslims to perform it when he ﷺ said:

```arabic
إِنَّ الصَّمْسَةَ وَالْقَمَرَ يَقُولُانِ يَوْمًا يَوْمًا يَمِينًا يَسْلُوبُانِ أَحَدًا وَلا
لَيْحَيَاهُ إِلَّا أَنْ يَرَاهُمَ ذُلُّ فَصُلُّوا
```

Indeed the sun and the moon are two signs from Allah’s signs; they do not become eclipsed for the death or life of anyone; so if you see an eclipse, then pray.[2]

The time for the Eclipse Prayer begins when either the moon or the sun becomes eclipsed, and its time finishes when the sun or the

---

[1] In *Al-Fatwa* (4:507) compiled by Dr. ‘Abdullah Ar-Tayyar and Shaikh Ahmad bin Baz, his eminence Shaikh ‘Abdul-‘Aziz bin Baz said, “If one misses the ‘Eid prayer, he should make it up for just as he does for the obligatory prayers.”

[2] Related by Al-Bukhari
What Must Be Known About Islam

moon – depending on which is eclipsed – appears again. But if an eclipse occurs at the end of the day, a time when it is extremely disliked to perform voluntary prayers, the Eclipse Prayer is replaced by remembrance of Allah, seeking His forgiveness, and supplication. This ruling applies to one who deems voluntary prayers to be categorically prohibited during the forbidden times. But if one is of the view that prayer for a reason is permissible during the forbidden times, then he may pray the Eclipse Prayer – and this latter view is correct.

What It Is Recommended To Do During An Eclipse: It is recommended to do as much of the following as one can: Remembering Allah Almighty, seeking His forgiveness, supplicating to Him, giving charity, freeing a slave, performing good deeds in general, and establishing ties with relatives. The Prophet ﷺ said:

إِنَّ السَّلَاتَ وَالْقُلُوبَ مَنْ أَتَىَ اللَّهَ وَلَا يَجِدَ مِنْهُ مُهَيْبًا وَلَا لَحْيَةً، إِنَّ دَخَلَهُ يَا قَادِرُوا اللَّهَ وَكُبْرُوا وَتَصَدِّقُوا وَصَلُوا

Indeed the sun and the moon are two signs from Allah’s signs; they do not become eclipsed for the death or life of anyone; so if you see an eclipse, then invoke Allah, say the Takbir, give charity, and pray.\(^1\)

How To Perform The Eclipse Prayer: The people gather in the Masjid without Athan or Iqamah, yet there is no harm in announcing it by saying, “Prayer in congregation.” The Imam then leads the congregation in two units, performing two bowings and standing twice in each unit. He should prolong the following – his recitation, bowing, and prostration. If the eclipse finishes during the prayer, then they may complete it in the form of the normal voluntary prayer. Unlike the ‘Eid prayers, it is not Sunnah to have a Khutbah during the Eclipse prayer; but if the Imam wishes to do so he may remind and admonish the people, and he does well if he does remind them. ‘Aishah, may Allah be pleased with her, said,

“The sun was eclipsed during the life of the Messenger of Allah ﷺ, and the Messenger of Allah ﷺ went to the Masjid. He stood and then

---

\(^1\) Related by Al-Bukhari
made *Takbir*; next, he made the people line up behind him. He prolonged his recitation, after which he made the *Takbir*, followed by a long bowing, though it was shorter than his recitation. Then he raised his head, saying, “Allāh listens to those who praise Him; O our Lord, to You belongs all praise.” Then, standing for a second time in the same unit, he prolonged his recitation, but made it shorter than the first recitation. Next, he made the *Takbir* followed by the bowing, which was shorter than the first bowing. Then he said, “Allāh listens to those who praise Him; O our Lord, to You belongs all praise.” Then he prostrated, after which he did the same in the second unit as he did in the first, until he had completed four bowings and four prostrations. Before he parted, the sun appeared; he stood, addressed the people, praising Allāh Almighty with the best praise he could. Then he said:

\[
إِنَّ السَّمَّاءَ وَالْقَمَرَ أَيْتَانَيْنِ بِمَآ إِلَىِّ اللَّهِ عُرْوَ وَرَجُلَ لَا يَخْفَفَانَ
\]

Indeed the sun and the moon are two signs from Allāh’s signs; they do not become eclipsed for the death or life of anyone; so if you see an eclipse, then take recourse in the prayer.

**A Lunar Eclipse**

The Eclipse Prayer is the same for both the solar and lunar eclipses, for the Prophet ﷺ said:

\[
فَإِذَا رَأَيْتُوهُمَا فَأَفْرَعُوْا لِلِّصَّالَةَ
\]

Then if you see it (i.e., an eclipse), then seek shelter in the prayer.

However, some of the people of knowledge hold that the Lunar Eclipse Prayer is the same as all other voluntary prayers, in that individuals should pray it in their homes or the *Majīd*. They hold that people should not gather and pray together because the Prophet ﷺ only gathered the people for prayer during a solar eclipse.

Therefore there is leeway in this issue: those who wish to gather to pray may do so and those who wish to pray individually may do so as well. The main point to keep in mind is that Muslims – both males
and females – should seek shelter in the prayer, so that Allāh Almighty may remove them from that state.

The Rain Prayer

Its Ruling: The Rain Prayer is a compulsory Sunnah; the Prophet ﷺ performed it and announced it to the people, who gathered with him in their place of prayer. ‘Abdullah bin Zaid, may Allāh be pleased with him, said, “The Prophet ﷺ went out supplicating for rain; he turned to the Qiblab and inverted his garment; then he then prayed two units, reading out loud in them.”[1]

What Is The Rain Prayer: When a drought occurs, people ask for forgiveness, pray, and invoke Allāh Almighty to provide them with rain for the land and for His slaves.

The Time for The Rain Prayer: The time for the Rain Prayer is just like the time for the ‘Eid prayer: when the sun is up the length of a spear – approximately fifteen minutes after the sun rises. ‘Aishah, may Allāh be pleased with her, said, “The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ went out for it when the edge of the sun appeared.”[2] Yet it is permitted to perform it any time, except for the disliked times, those times when the prayer is forbidden.

What Is Recommended To Do Before The Rain Prayer: It is recommended for the Imam to announce it before its appointed date by days; he should also exhort the people to repent from their sins and to desist in their transgressions against others. He should encourage them to fast and give charity, as well as to avoid any quarrels. He does the above because sins cause droughts to take place, just as obedience to Allāh Almighty causes blessings and good things to occur.

The Rain Prayer Described: The Imam and the people come out to the place of prayer, and he leads them in two units, making seven Takhbirs in the first unit with the opening Takbir. In the second unit, he makes five Takhbirs after the Takbir for standing, just as he does in the ‘Eid prayer. In the first unit, he reads out loud, reciting “Sabbitasna Rabbikal-A’la” after Surat Al-Fatihah, and in the second unit,

---

[1] Agreed upon
Al-Ghashiyah: Then he faces the people, giving them a sermon, seeking much forgiveness from Allâh during it. Next, he should supplicate, and the people should say, “Aameen” after his supplications. Then, facing the Qiblah, he should invert his garment, making what was on the right to be on the left, and vice versa. The people should also invert their garments, after which they supplicate and leave.

Abu Hurairah said, “Allâh’s Prophet ﷺ went out asking for rain, and he prayed two units with us, with neither Althan nor Iqamah. He then gave us a sermon and invoked Allâh. Raising his hands, he changed direction, facing the Qiblab. Next, he inverted his garment, putting the right side on the left, and the left side on the right.”[1]

Some Of The Wordings Related To Us Regarding Supplication For Rain: It has been related that the Prophet ﷺ would say the following supplication for rain:

اللہُمَّ اشِيَّنَا عِبَادًا مَّرَبِيعًا عَدَّةً مُّجَالَدًا عَامًا طَيِّباً سَمَحاً دَائِنًا.

اللہُمَّ دُلْوَاءِ وَأَمَانًا وَخَفَافًا وَحَمَمًا وَحَلَفًا مِّنَ الأَذَّى وَالْجَهِّلَةِ وَالْفَتَكَّا

ما لاَ تَشْكُوْهُ إِلَّا اِلَّهَ. اللہُمَّ أَطْبِ لَنَا الْزَّوْرَ وَأَفْرِ لَنَا الْصُّرْعَ،

وَأَشِيَّنَا مِنَ الْكَبِرَاتِ الشَّمَاءَ، وَأَشِيَّنَا مِنَ الْفَرْحَاتِ الرَّأْسِيَ. اللہُمَّ اَرْفِعْ عَنَا الْجَهَّلَةِ وَالْغَرُورَ وَالْعَزُّ، وَأَشِيَّنَا عِبَادًا مِّنَ الْبَلَاءِ ما لاَ تَشْكُوْهُ إِلَّا اِلَّهَ. اللہُمَّ إِنَا نَشْتَغِيَرُكَ، إِنَّكَ تُنَفِّفَ أَوْلَى، فَأَرْسِلِ الشَّمَاءَ عَلَيْنَا مَدْرَارًا، اللہُمَّ أَشِيَّنَا عِبَادًا وَبَهَائِمًا، وَأَشِيَّنَا رَحْمَتَكَ، وَأَشِيَّنَا بَرَكَاتَكَ، اللہُمَّ أَشِيَّنَا عِبَادًا وَبَهَائِمًا، وَأَشِيَّنَا رَحْمَتَكَ، وَأَشِيَّنَا بَرَكَاتَكَ، اللہُمَّ أَشِيَّنَا عِبَادًا وَبَهَائِمًا، وَأَشِيَّنَا رَحْمَتَكَ، بَلْدَكَ الْمَبْتَجِّيَّ.”

O Allâh! Quench us with a shower that is wholesome and fertile, abundant and vital, covering all around and flowing steadily. O Allâh! Quench us with a shower and do not make us among those who despair! O Allâh! For the worshippers, the land, the animals, and the creatures, for their suffering, struggling and hardships that we do not complain of except to You. O Allâh! Cause our farms to sprout growth, and the

[1] Ahmad, Ibn Majah, Al-Baihaqi; the narrators of this Hadith are all trustworthy.
udders of our animals to flow. Quench us from the blessings of the heavens and sprout the blessings of the earth for us. O Allâh! Remove the suffering, the hunger, and the affliction from us, deliver us from a trial that none can deliver from besides You. O Allâh! We indeed seek Your forgiveness, You are certainly forgiving, so send the skies pouring forth upon us. O Allâh! Quench the thirst of Your worshippers and Your animals, spread Your mercy and enliven Your dying city.[1]

It has also been related that the Prophet ﷺ would say the following supplication when it would rain:

اللَّهُمَّ سَميِّنا رَحْمَةً لَا سَميِّا عَذَابًا، وَلَا بَلاَءًا، وَلَا عَذَمَ وَلَا غَرَيٍّ

اللَّهُمَّ عَلَى الْصَّرَابِ وَذَا بَناتِ السَّجِّيرِ، اللَّهُمَّ خَوَالِيْنا وَلَا عَلِيْنا»

O Allâh, make it be a rain of mercy, not a rain of punishment, trial, destruction, or drowning. O Allâh, (make it fall) in the streets and to the roots of the trees. O Allâh, around us and not upon us.[2]

The Istikharah Prayer

When one wants something that is permissible and is confused regarding the choice he should make, not knowing what option is better for him, it is Sunnah for him to pray two units – outside of the obligatory prayers, units that he may pray at any time during the day or night, and in which he may recite whatever he pleases after Al-Fatihah. After saying the Taslim from this two-unit prayer, he should praise Allâh, send blessings upon the Prophet ﷺ, and continue by invoking Allâh, using the invocation that is related in Al-Bukhari, and that is narrated by Jabîr, may Allâh be pleased with him, who said, “The Prophet ﷺ would instruct us to make the Istikharah (to pray for guidance) in all of our affairs; (he taught it to us) just as he would teach us a Surah from the Qur’ân, saying:

إِذَا هُمْ أَحَدُّهُمْ بِالْأُمَرِ، فَلَبَّتُمْ رَكَعَتَيْنِ مِنْ غَيْبَةِ الْقُرْآنِ، ثُمَّ لَلَّيْلَ: اللَّهُمَّ إِنِّي أَسْتَجِبُكَ بِعِلْمِكَ، وَأَسْتَفْرَكُ بِقَدْرِكَ، وَأَسْأَلُكَ مِنْ
If one of you is worried about a matter, then let him pray two units of prayer other than the obligatory; then let him say, "O Allah, I seek Your Counsel by Your Knowledge, and strength by Your Power, and I ask You from Your immense favor, for verily You are Able while I am not, and verily You know what I do not, and You are the Knower of the Unseen. O Allah, if You know this affair – and here he mentions his need – to be good for me in relation to my religion, my life, and end, then decree and facilitate it for me, and bless me with it, and if You know this affair to be bad for me towards my religion, my life, and end, then remove it from me and remove me from it, and decree for me what is good wherever it be, and make me satisfied with that."

An-Nawawi said, "After the Istikharah, one should do that which his heart opens to, so one should not depend on what his heart was open to based on his desires before he performed the Istikharah. Before performing the two units of Istikharah, the worshipper should empty his mind of biases toward one choice over the other, because otherwise, he is not really seeking guidance from Allah, in which case he is not truthful when he claims to be seeking that which is best for him, and when he ascribes ignorance to himself, while ascribing ability and knowledge to Allah, for if he was sincere in saying those things, he would absolve himself from having any power or ability and he would leave off choosing for himself."
The Rulings For Funerals

1. The Muslim Must Be Patient When Hardships Afflict Him

When hardships afflict the Muslim, he must be patient, not showing anger or vexation, for both Allâh Almighty and His Messenger ﷺ ordered Muslims to be patient. Even though one must be patient, there is no harm in the sick person describing his situation, such as when he says, “I am sick,” or “I am in pain,” or “In all situations, all praise is for Allâh.”

2. It Is Compulsory To Visit The Sick

When his brother is afflicted with sickness, a Muslim must visit him, for the Prophet ﷺ said:

أطعموا الجائع وعطُدوا المريض، وفُكروا العاني -الأسير-

Feed the hungry, visit the sick, and ransom the captive.[1]

When a Muslim visits his sick brother, he should invoke Allâh Almighty to cure him, advise his brother to be patient, and speak to him such words as will comfort him. It is also recommended not to sit for a long time with him. When the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ would visit a sick person, he would say to him:

لا بأس، طهُور إن شاء الله

It’s all right; this is purification (from your sins) – if Allâh wills.[2]

A Muslim should say this phrase when he visits his sick brother.

3. It Is Compulsory To Have Good Thoughts About Allâh When One Is Sick

When a Muslim is sick – and especially when he is on the verge of death – he should have good thoughts about Allâh Almighty, that Allâh will have mercy on Him and forgive him, that His forgiveness is vast, and that His mercy encompasses all things. The Prophet ﷺ said:

لا يمرون أحدكم إلا هو يغفر به اللطيف

Let not one of you die except that he has good thoughts about Allâh. [1]

4. **Prompting One Who Is About To Die**

When a Muslim is present during the last moments of his brother’s life, he should gently prompt him to say the phrase of sincerity, saying to him, *Laa Ilaha Illâl-lâh* (None has the right to be worshipped but Allâh). He should remind him to say it until he remembers and says it. If the sick person says it, then he should leave him alone. But if the sick person then says something else, he should return to prompting him, hoping that his last words will be *Laa Ilaha Illâl-lâh*, so that he enters Paradise, for the Prophet ﷺ said:

"أَلْقِنَا مُوَّاتِيكَ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ"

Prompt to say *Laa Ilaha Illâl-lâh* those who are dying. [2]

And the Prophet ﷺ said:

"مَنْ كَانَ أُخْرَ كَلَامًا لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ"

Whoever’s last words are “*Laa Ilaha Illâl-lâh*,” enters Paradise. [3]

5. **Paying Off The Debts Of The Deceased**

Those who remain behind should hasten to pay off any debts that the deceased may have incurred. The Prophet ﷺ said:

"يُنسِى الأَمْوَالُ مَعْلَةً يَدَّ يَدَّ، حَتَّى يُفَضَّلْ عَنْهُ"

The soul of the believer is suspended by his debt, until it is paid off for him. [4]

6. **Al-Istihjâ’, Supplication, And Patience**

The family of the deceased should hold fast to patience, especially in the period immediately following the loss of their relative. The Prophet ﷺ said:

---

[1] Related by Muslim
[2] Related by Muslim
[3] Recorded by Abu Dawud and it is authentic.
[4] Related by Al-Bukhari
Indeed patience is only during the initial shock.\(^{[1]}\)

He should supplicate as much as he can and say the *Istihja* – *Istihja* is to say, “Indeed we belong to Allâh and indeed to Him we are returning.” The Prophet ﷺ said:

```
أُجُرِّنيَ في مَصِيبَتِيَ وَأُخْلِفَ لي حَرَّمَتُها، إِلَّا أَجْرِيَ اللهُ تَعَالَى فِي مَصِيبَتِيَ، وَأُخْلِفَ لَهُ حَرَّمَتُها
```

Whenever a worshipper is afflicted by a hardship and then says, “Indeed, we belong to Allâh and indeed to Him is our return. O Allâh: reward me in my affliction, and replace for me that which is better than it (i.e., the thing that he lost),” Allâh rewards him in his affliction and replaces for him that which is better than it.\(^{[2]}\)

The Prophet ﷺ also said:

```
يَقُولُ اللّهُ تَعَالَى: مَا لِيْدُي الْمُؤْمِنِينَ جَرَاءَةٌ، إِذَا قُبْضَتْ صَفِيَةً
```

Allâh Almighty says, “When I take the precious one of My worshipper from this world, and then when he seeks his reward with Me, my worshipper has no reward with Me other than Paradise.”\(^{[3]}\)

7. It Is Obligatory To Wash The Body

When a Muslim dies – be he young or old, his body remaining fully intact or partially intact – it is obligatory to perform *Ghusl* on his body. The only exception for this ruling is the martyr who died in a battle - in *Jihâd* in the way of Allâh – at the hands of the disbelievers because the Prophet ﷺ said regarding such martyrs:

\(^{[1]}\) Related by Al-Bukhari
\(^{[2]}\) Related by Muslim
\(^{[3]}\) Related by Ahmad with an authentic chain.
Do not wash them, for from each injury or all of his blood, musk will emanate on the Day of Judgement.[1]

8. How To Wash The Dead

In terms of what is sufficient for the washing to be considered correct, water may be poured over the body, so that it reaches all of its parts.

The More Complete And Recommended Way Of Washing The Body: The deceased should be placed on an elevated surface, and a trustworthy righteous person should attend the washing. He should lightly squeeze the stomach of the body in the hope that that will facilitate the discharge of any harmful matter. Next, he should wrap a rag around his hand, making intention to wash the body. He begins by washing the private parts, cleaning away any harmful matter. Then, taking off the rag, he should perform the ablution for prayer on the deceased, after which he washes the rest of the body, beginning from the top, going down until he reaches the feet. He should wash the body three times, but if cleanliness is not achieved, then five times. On the last washing, he should apply camphor or Sidr or the like.

If the deceased is a female Muslim, then her braids should be undone and her hair washed, after which her braids should be done again. The Prophet ﷺ ordered, for such to be done with the hair of his daughter.[2]

A trustworthy and righteous female washes the female Muslim’s body. Then perfume or the like is applied. The husband may wash the body of his wife just as a wife may wash the body of her husband.

9. Tayammum Replaces The Ghusl When Necessary

When water cannot be found to wash the deceased or when a man dies in a place populated by women only, or a woman dies in a place populated by men only – in these instances, Tayammum is performed on the deceased and the deceased is then enshrouded.

[1] Ahmad, with an authentic chain
[2] Al-Bukhari
This is similar to the situation of the Junūb (for example, one who has had sexual intercourse) who cannot find water: he must perform Tayammum and then pray. That is because the Prophet ﷺ said:

إِذَا مَاتَتِ الْمَرْأَةُ مَعَ رَجُالٍ لَّيْسَ مَعْهُمُ اِلمُرْأَةُ غَيْرُهَا، وَالرَّجُلُ مَعَ يَسِيِّئِ لَهُ مَعْهُ رَجُلٌ غَيْرُهُ، فَإِنَّهُمَا يُتَحْمِّشانَ وَيُقَبَّلُنَا

If a woman dies among men, and there is not a single woman among them, and if a man dies among woman, and there is not a single man among them, then Tayammum is performed on them, after which they are buried.1

They are of the status of one who cannot find water.

10. Enshrouding The Body Is Compulsory

After the deceased Muslim is washed, it is obligatory to enshroud him with enough material to cover his entire body. Muṣ'ab b. ʿUmar, one of the martyrs of the battle of Uhud, was enshrouded in a very short garment, and so the Prophet ﷺ ordered the Companions to cover his head and body with that garment and to cover his legs with Ḥikbir (lemon grass).2 This shows that it is compulsory to cover the entire body and that Ḥikbir is resorted to when there is not enough cloth to cover the rest of the body.

11. Prayer Upon The Deceased

When a Muslim dies, it is a communal obligation to pray over the deceased, the same ruling that is given to the washing, the enshrouding, and the burying of the deceased. As long as some Muslims perform it, the rest of the community is absolved from the obligation. The Prophet ﷺ used to pray over those Muslims who died; however, he would not pray over someone who died having outstanding debts without having someone pay those debts for him after his death; instead, the Prophet ﷺ would say to his Companions:

"صلوا على صاحبكم" (Pray over your companion).3

---

1 Abu Dawud in his Maraseel and Al-Baihaqi.
2 Related by Al-Bukhari.
3 Related by Al-Bukhari.
12. The Conditions Of Prayer Over The Deceased

The same conditions that apply to a regular prayer also apply to the Funeral Prayer: so the worshipper, for instance, must be in a state of purity, he must cover his *Awrab*, and he must face the *Qiblah*. All of the above and other conditions apply because the Prophet ﷺ called the Funeral Prayer a prayer when he said:

«صاحب على صاحبك»

Pray over your companion.

Therefore it falls under the rulings of prayer in terms of its conditions.

13. The Obligatory Elements Of The Funeral Prayer Are As Follows

1) Standing, for whoever is able to do so.
2) Making intention, for the Prophet ﷺ said:

«إِنَّمَا الْأَعْمَالُ لِلَّهِ مِنْ نَبَاتٍ...»

Indeed deeds are based on intentions.
3) Recitation of *Surat Al-Fatihah*, or at least praising and extolling Allâh.
4) Sending blessings and salutations upon the Prophet ﷺ.
5) Making the four *Takbirs*.
6) Supplication.
7) The *Taslim*.

14. How To Perform It

1) The body of the deceased – or the bodies – should be placed so that it is facing the *Qiblah*.

2) The *Imam* stands, with the people behind him, making at least three rows, for the Prophet ﷺ said,

«من صلى عليه ثلاثة صموف فقد أرجيت»

Whoever is prayed upon by three rows then it (Paradise) becomes binding.[1]

[1] At-Tirmithi, who declared it to be *Hasan*. 
3) The worshipper raises his hands, intending prayer over one dead person or more – depending on the situation – saying, “Allāhu Akbar (Allāh is the Most Great).”

4) Next, he recites Al-Fatihah, after which he says, “Allāhu Akbar,” raising his hands if he wishes, or leaving them on his chest, with the right hand over the left one. Then he sends blessings upon the Prophet ﷺ, using the same wording that he uses in the Tashahhud.

5) Next, he makes Takbir and supplicates for the deceased.

6) Then he makes another Takbir.

7) At this point – after the fourth Takbir – he may either supplicate and make one Taslim or he may make one Taslim immediately. It has been related that the Sunnah in the prayer is for the Imam to make Takbir, to recite Al-Fatihah, silently to himself, to send blessings upon the Prophet ﷺ, to sincerely supplicate for the deceased in the Takbirs. Then, without reciting anything from the Qur’ān, he makes Taslim silently to himself.[1]

15. The Supplication

The supplication made during the Funeral Prayer has been related with a number of different wordings; it is sufficient for one to use any of those supplications that are related; here are some of them:

اللّهُمَّ إنّ فلانًا ابن فلان في ذُمَك وحَلِيل جَوارك فَقيه من فينِّي النَّجَير وعَذّاب النَّار، وَأَنتَ أَهْل الْوُقُوف والْحَيْثَ، اللّهُمَّ أَغْفِر لَهُ وَارْحَمْهُ فإنَّكَ أَنتَ الْعَفَّانُ الرَّحْيم. اللّهُمَّ أَغْفِر لَهُمَا وَمُنِيَّانًا وَصُغِّبيَّانًا وَكِيْبِيَّانَا وَذَكْرِيَّانَا وَأَنْتَانَا وَعَاصِيَانَا. اللّهُمَّ مِنّي أَخْيِينَيْنِي مِنْ فَاخَرَيْكَ عَلَى الإِسْلَامِ، وَمِنْ تَوْفِيقِي مِنْ فَتْوَيْكَ عَلَى الإِسْلَامِ. اللّهُمَّ لَا تُحْرِمْنَا أَجْرَهُ، وَلَا نُضْلِنَا بَعْدَهٍ

O Allāh, so-and-so is under Your care and protection, so protect him from the trial of the grave and torment of the Fire. Indeed You are the Guardian of faithful and truthful. Forgive and have mercy upon him, surely You are the Oft-Forgiving,

the Most Merciful. O Allah, forgive our living and our dead, those present and those absent, our young and our old, our males and our females. O Allah, whom among us You keep alive, then let such a life be upon Islam, and whom among us You take unto Yourself, then let such a death be upon faith. O Allah, do not deprive us of his reward and do not let us stray after him.

If the deceased is a child, then the worshipper says:

اللهُمَّ اجْعَلْهُ لَوْالَّذِينَ سَلَفًا وَذَخَرًا وَفَرَطًا وَتَقِلْهُ بِمَوْارِيِّهِمْ وَأَعْظُمْهُ بِأَجُورِهِمْ، وَلاَ تَرْحَمْنَا وَإِنَّا أَجْرِهِمْ أَجْرًا وَلَا تَنَبِّئَنَا وَإِنَّا أَجْرِهِمْ بَعْدَهُ. الْلَّهُمَّ أَنْحَفْهُ يَصَالِحَ سَلَفَ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ فِي حَمَالَتِهِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ وَأَبْنَاهُ دَارًا حَبِّيًَّا مِنْ دَارِهِ، وَأَحْلَالًا حُبَّرًا مِنْ أَهْلِهِ، وَيَغْفِرْهُ مِنْ فَتْحَةِ القُبُورِ، وَمِنْ غَلَابِ ّجَهَنَّمَ

O Allah, make him a preceding reward, a predecessor, and a stored treasure for his parents. O Allah, through him, make heavy their Scales and magnify their reward. O Allah, do not deprive us and them of his reward, and do not put us and them to trial after him. O Allah, unite him with the righteous believing predecessors, and place him under the care of Ibrahim. Exchange his home for a better home, and his family for a better family, and keep him safe from the trial of the grave and the punishment of the Hellfire.

16. Following the Funeral until the Burial

It is from the Sunnah to go out with the funeral procession, for the Prophet ﷺ said:

َعَوْدُوا الْمَرْيَضَ وَأَمْسُوا نَعَضٌ الْجَنازةَ تُذْكَرُ كُلُّ الْآخِرَةَ

Visit the sick and walk with the funeral, for they remind you of the Hereafter.\[1]\[

It is also Sunnah to hasten the body to its grave because the Prophet ﷺ said:

\[1\] Related by Muslim
What Must Be Known About Islam

It is also recommended to walk in front of the funeral procession because the Prophet ﷺ, Abu Bakr, and ‘Umar walked in front of it.[2]

As for the virtues of following a funeral, the Prophet ﷺ said:

Whoever follows the funeral of a Muslim, with faith, expecting his reward (from Allâh), and continues with it from the time the deceased is prayed upon until the burial is completed, then he returns with two Qirats, and each Qirat is like Uhud. And whoever prays upon the deceased but returns before it is buried, then he returns with one Qirat (of reward).[3]

17. The Burial

The burial – completely covering the body with dirt – is a communal obligation, which means that if some people do it, the rest of the community is absolved from the obligation. Allâh Almighty says:

Then He causes him to die, and puts him in his grave;[4]

There are certain rulings related to the burial; here are some of them:

[1] Al-Bukhari
[3] Related by Al-Bukhari
1) The grave should be deep enough to prevent predators and birds from reaching the body; it should also be made deep to prevent any odor from causing harm. The Prophet ﷺ said:

احفروا وأعمقوا وأحسنوا واشفيوا البتين والثلثان في قبر واجب

Dig, and dig deep, and perform it well, and bury two or three in a single grave.

The Companions asked, “Whom do we give precedence to, O Messenger of Allâh?”

He ﷺ said:

قدمو أكثرهم قرآنًا

Put in first the one from them who knows the most from the Qur’ân.[1]

2) A hole should be dug in the right side of the grave, and that hole is called a Labd. A Labd is better than a Shaqq, which is a hole dug in the center of the grave, even though the Shaqq is permissible. The Prophet ﷺ said:

اللبيد نحن نفا والفش في يغفو

The Labd is for us and the Shaqq is for other than us.[2]

3) It is recommended for one who attends the burial to pour three handfuls of dirt into the grave, from the direction of the head of the deceased. This was the practice of the Prophet ﷺ, as mentioned by Ibn Majah, with a chain in which there is no harm.

4) If possible, the body should be inserted from the back of the grave; then he should be made to face the Qiblah and is placed on his right side. The straps of the shroud should be undone but the face must not be exposed. Because the Prophet ﷺ did so, the one who places the deceased in the grave should say,

Related by At-Tirmithi; he declared it to be authentic. No more than one body should be buried per grave unless there is a necessity, such as when there are a great many bodies.

Ahmad, Abu Dawud, At-Tirmithi; there are disparaging remarks regarding its chain; however, some of the people of knowledge have declared it to be authentic.
In the Name of Allâh and upon the religion of the Messenger of Allâh.\[1\]

5) While a female body is being placed in her grave, the grave should be covered with a cloth. Our pious predecessors would cover the grave of a woman but they wouldn’t do so for a man.

---

\[1\] Related by Abu Dawud and Al-Hakim, who said it is authentic.
The Third Pillar: Zakat
(Compulsory Charity)[1]

Zakat is not only obligatory in Islam, but it is also one of Islam’s pillars, ranking third in importance after the two testimonies of faith and the prayer. Allah’s Book, the Prophet’s Sunnah, and the consensus of the Muslims attest to Zakat being obligatory. Whoever denies that it is obligatory to give Zakat is a disbeliever, an apostate from whom repentance is demanded. If he repents, then that is well; otherwise, he is killed. Whoever is stingy regarding the Zakat, giving less than what is due from him, then he is from the wrongdoers who deserves the punishment of Allah. Allah Almighty says:

And let not those who covetously withhold of that which Allah has bestowed on them of His bounty (wealth) think that it is good for them (and so they do not pay the obligatory Zakat). Nay, it will be worse for them; the things which they covetously withheld shall be tied to their necks like a collar on the Day of Resurrection. And to Allah belongs the heritage of the heavens and the earth; and Allah is Well-Acquainted with all that you do.[2]

In a Hadith related by Abu Hurairah, may Allah be pleased with him, the Prophet ﷺ said:

[1] Taken from a dissertation on Zakat, written by Shaikh Muhammad bin Salih Al-Uthaimin
What Must Be Known About Islam

Whomsoever Allâh gives wealth to but doesn’t pay Zakat for it, a bald-headed poisonous male snake with two black dots above its eyes will take form for him – it will have no fur on its scalp – and will squeeze him on the Day of Judgement. Then the snake will take him by the corners of his mouth and say, “I am your wealth, I am your treasure.”

And Allâh Almighty says:

And those who hoard up gold and silver (Al-Kanz: the money, the Zakat of which has not been paid), and spend it not in the way of Allâh, announce unto them a painful torment. On the Day when that (Al-Kanz: money, gold and silver, etc., the Zakat of which has not been paid) will be heated in the fire of Hell and with it will be branded their foreheads, their flanks, and their backs, (and it will be said to them): “This is the treasure which you hoarded for yourselves. Now taste of what you used to hoard.”

In yet another Hadith related by Abu Hurairah, may Allâh be pleased with him, the Prophet ﷺ said:

Any owner of gold or silver who does not pay their due (i.e., Zakat) will have plates of fire prepared for him on the Day of Judgement. They will be heated in the Fire, and then his side,

[1] Related by Al-Bukhari
[2] (At-Taubah 9:34,35)
his forehead, and his back will be ironed (by those plates). Each time he becomes cool again, the process is repeated on him in a day whose measure is equal to fifty thousand years, until finally judgements will have been passed among (Allâh’s) worshippers.”[1]

**Some Of The Benefits Of Zakat**

Zakat has many individual, social, and religious benefits; we will begin by mentioning some of its religious benefits:

1) By paying Zakat, one fulfills one of the pillars of Islam, around which revolves happiness for Allâh’s worshippers both in this world and the Hereafter.

2) By giving Zakat, one gets closer to his Lord, and just as in other acts of obedience, his faith increases.

3) The rewards for giving charity are great; Allâh Almighty says:

   "وَمَا عَلَّمَتْ مِن رَبِّهِ مِنْ رَيْبٍ "
   "And that which you give in gift (to others), in order that it may increase (your wealth by expecting to get a better one in return) from other people’s property, has no increase with Allâh, but that which you give in Zakat seeking Allâh’s Face then those, they shall have manifold increase."[3]

And the Prophet ﷺ said:

And related by Muslim

---

[1] Related by Muslim
[3] (Ar-Rum 30:39)
What Must Be Known About Islam

Whoever gives charity from his good and lawful earnings in the amount equal to a date – and Allâh accepts only that which is good and pure – then indeed Allâh will take it with His Right and will raise it for its giver, just as one of you raises his colt until it becomes like a mountain.[1]

4) Allâh wipes out the sins of His worshippers with their charity; the Prophet ﷺ said:

وَالصَّدَقَةُ تُطَيِّبُ الْخَطَيْتَانِ كَمَا يُطَيِّبُ الْمَاءِ النَّارَ

And charity extinguishes a sin just as water extinguishes fire.

“Charity” in this Hadith embraces both Zakat and voluntary charity.

The Benefits Of Zakat On Manners And Morals

1) The giver of Zakat joins the ranks of the generous ones, those who give freely from their wealth.

2) The giver of Zakat is described as being merciful and compassionate to his poor Muslim brothers. It is the merciful ones upon whom Allâh shows mercy.

3) Those who give financial or physical support to their Muslim brothers gain a sense of joy and peace in their hearts and souls, which further results in one being loved in proportion to that which he expends.

4) Zakat purifies the character of its giver – purifies him from miserliness, for Allâh says:

Take Sadaqah (alms) from their wealth in order to purify them and sanctify them with it, and invoke Allâh for them.[2]

Some Of The Societal Benefits Of Zakat

1) The needs of the poor are fulfilled, an especially important achievement, considering that the poor represent the greater

[1] Al-Bukhari and Muslim

[2] (At-Tawbah 9:103)
percentage of populations in most countries. Were every rich Muslim to pay Zakat as Allah commands, there would not remain a single poor, needy person among the Muslims.

2) Zakat strengthens Muslims as a whole, and it raises their status, which is why Jihad in the way of Allah is one of the categories deserving of Zakat – as we shall soon mention, if Allah wills.

3) Through Zakat, rancor and malice leave the hearts of the poor and the weak. When the poor see the extravagant lifestyle of the rich, without seeing any benefit from their wealth at all, they will perhaps feel anger and enmity toward the rich, who did not give them their due right, and did not help them in their needs. But when the rich give a share of their money to the poor on a yearly basis, that anger disappears, being replaced by love and brotherhood.

4) Wealth increases, and not decreases, when charity is given – because of the blessings of charity. The Prophet ﷺ said:

\[
\text{"ما نَقْصَتْ صدقة من مالٍ"}
\]

(Charity does not cause one’s wealth to diminish, meaning that though, in quantity, one’s wealth ostensibly decreases, it does not decrease in blessings and it causes increase in the future; indeed Allah replaces the wealth one gives in charity and blesses one in the wealth he has.

5) When the rich in society give Zakat as they should give it, wealth is distributed to a much larger circle of people, as opposed to wealth remaining among the few who are rich.

The benefits mentioned above show that Zakat is necessary to rectify the individual and society – and glory be to Allah, the All-Knowing, the All-Wise.

Zakat is obligatory in certain kinds of wealth, such as gold and silver, as long as they reach the Nisab – the minimum amount one has to have in order for Zakat to be obligatory upon him. For gold it is twenty Mithqals or, eleven and three-sevenths Saudi or European Junais (monetary pound). For silver it is fifty-six Saudi Riyals of silver or its equivalent in paper money.

The Zakat on gold and silver is 2.5%; this applies when the gold or
silver are raw, when they are made into jewelry – and more importantly nowadays, to paper currency. Therefore a woman must pay Zakat on her gold and silver jewelry if their value reaches the Nisab; she must pay Zakat on her jewelry regardless of whether she wears the jewelry herself or lends it out to others. Zakat applies to jewelry based on the general proofs indicating that it is obligatory to pay Zakat on gold and silver: since those proofs don’t go into detail, they apply to all kinds of gold and silver. There are even specific proofs that point to Zakat being mandatory on jewelry, even if worn, such as the Hadith related by ‘Abdullah bin ‘Amr bin Al-‘Aas, may Allāh be pleased with them, in which a woman went to the Prophet ﷺ, and in her daughter’s hands were two gold bracelets. The Prophet ﷺ asked:

«أَنَّ عِبَادَةَ رَكَابَ هَذَا؟
Do you give Zakat for this?
She said, “No.” The Prophet ﷺ said:

«أَيُّسَّرَكَ أَن يُسَوَّرَكَ اللَّهُ بِهِمَا سَوَارَيْنِ مِنَ النَّارِ
Does it please you that because of them Allāh encloses you in two bracelets made of Fire.
She threw them, and said, “They are for Allāh and His Messenger.” The author of Bulugh Al-Marām said that the three Sunan compilers related it, and that its chain is strong.

This is the safer view, and what is safer is more preferable. However, some scholars hold that Zakat is not obligatory on jewelry that is used among women.

Another form of wealth upon which Zakat is obligatory is anything that is meant for sale – land, cars, cattle, clothing, and so on. It is obligatory to pay 2.5% on this kind of wealth; when the year arrives (from the date it was allotted for sale) the goods are estimated, and 2.5% percent is paid on them. This applies both when the estimated amount for the goods is more than the amount that was originally paid, or less than that amount. But if one has goods that he uses himself or that he rents out, such as land and cars, then there is no Zakat on those items, for the Prophet ﷺ said:
There is no Sadaqah on the slave or horse of a Muslim.\[^1\]
But it is obligatory on the money received as rent when one year passes and upon gold and silver jewelry, as mentioned.

**The Categories Of People Who May Receive Zakat**

Allâh Almighty clarified the categories of people to whom Zakat is paid when He said:

\[
	ext{إِنَّمَا الْصَّدَقَاتُ لِلْفَقَرَاءِ وَالْمَسَاءِلِينَ وَالْمَرْفَوْعِينَ عَلَيْهِمْ وَالْمَوْلَأَةَ فَوَلَّوْهُمْ وَفِي}
\[
	ext{الْقَابِلِينَ إِلَىَّ وَفِي سَبِيلِ اللَّهِ وَأَنَّ لَنْ أَشْهَدَنِ فِي هَذِهِ مَنْ طَغَىٰ وَلَنَزَكَّىٰ}
\]

As-Sadaqat (here it means Zakat) are only for the Fuqara' (poor), and Al-Masakin (the needy) and those employed to collect (the funds); and to attract the hearts of those who have been inclined (towards Islam); and to free the captives; and for those in debt; and for Allâh’s cause (i.e., for Muâjahidun – those fighting in the holy wars), and for the wayfarer (a traveler who is cut off from everything); a duty imposed by Allâh, and Allâh is All-Knower, All-Wise.\[^2\]

**They Are Of Eight Categories**

1) The poor: they are those who can barely find less than half of what they need. If a person doesn’t find enough to spend on himself and his family for a period of six months, then he is considered to be a poor person, and is given what is enough for him and his family for a period of one year.

2) The needy (a level of poverty above that of the poor): They are those who can find half or more of what they need, but are not able to find what they need over a period of an entire year. They are given a sufficient amount so that their expenditures for the year are satisfied. If a man doesn’t have money, but receives money continually through his occupation, salary, or investments – that

\[^{1}\] Agreed upon

\[^{2}\] (Al-Tawbah 9:60)
which is enough to sustain him – then he is not given from the Zakat, for the Prophet صل الله عليه وسلم said:

لا حتف فيها إلا عيني ولا لقيت مكتسب

The rich person, and the strong person who earns, they have no share in it.[1]

3) Zakat Employees: These are the people the general ruler of the country appoints to collect the Zakat from those who must give it, and to distribute it to those who deserve it; and those who are appointed to safeguard the Zakat wealth between the period that it is paid and the period it is paid off to its recipients. They are given from Zakat money in proportion to their work, even if they are rich.

4) Zakat is also for those who are inclined toward Islam, those whose hearts can be further attracted to the true religion. This mainly applies to leaders and chiefs whose level of faith is weak; they are given wealth to strengthen their faith, so that they can be good examples for others and so that they may call others to Islam. But what if one’s faith is weak, and rather than being a chief or leader in the community, he is an average member thereof – is Zakat paid to him to attract his heart to Islam?

Some scholars are of the opinion that he is given from the Zakat because the benefits of religion are greater than that of the body, meaning that if he is poor, we give him money to maintain his body, so because his faith and religion is weak, he should be given Zakat to maintain or strengthen his religion - and the benefit of doing so is greater than the benefit of maintaining the body. However, other scholars are of the view that the common man is not given from the Zakat if his faith is weak, simply because the benefits of giving him are constricted to him as an individual, as opposed to a leader or chief: the benefits of giving them are not limited because they are more able to influence others when calling them to Islam.

5) Slaves and captives: Zakat money can be used to buy a slave and free him, to complete the payments for those slaves who have a contract with their owners to give certain amounts of payments until they free themselves. Zakat money can also be used to ransom

[1] Agreed upon
Muslim prisoners.

6) Those in debt: If one in debt doesn’t have enough to pay off his debt, he may receive Zakat money to do so; he may be given Zakat money regardless of whether his debt is small or great. Even if one is rich in the sense that he has a salary that allows him to feed himself and his family, he may receive Zakat money to pay off a debt that he cannot pay off himself. If one’s intention is to give Zakat to a poor person he owes money to, his debt stands: he still must pay it off. If one owes money to his father or son, he too may receive Zakat money to pay off his debts – according to the correct view from among the different views of the scholars in this issue. If the one who pays Zakat knows that someone owes someone else money without being able to pay it off, he may go directly to the one owed and pay the debt for him, even if the one in debt does not know what he did.

7) And for Allah’s cause: Those fighting for the cause of Allah are given that amount which is enough for them in their Jihad. So from the Zakat money, weapons for Jihad may be purchased. “For Allah’s cause” here includes those who are seeking Islamic knowledge, so the student of Islamic knowledge is given an amount that is sufficient for him to pursue his studies – books and whatever else he needs, unless he has enough money himself to pursue his studies.

8) The wayfarer: If a traveler is cut off from the means of continuing his travel to his destination, he may be given enough so that he can reach his country.

These are the categories of Zakat that Allah Almighty mentioned in His Book, and He informed us that it is an obligation which He ordered us to perform, based on His Complete Knowledge and Wisdom, for He is All-Knowing, All-Wise. Zakat wealth, then, can be used for no other purpose: it cannot be used to build Masjids or to fix roads. Allah Almighty mentioned the categories of Zakat in such a way as to limit the Zakat to them.

If one reflects on the categories of Zakat, he should find that Zakat is paid to those who need it for their own selves, or to those whom the Muslims need. Hence one realizes the wisdom in the legislation of Zakat: building a good and strong society in which its individuals complement and complete each other as much as possible. Islam, a
complete way of life, did not neglect legislation in regard to wealth and in regard to the benefits that can be derived from wealth; furthermore, Islam does not give freedom to those souls that are greedy or miserly to follow their desires, greed, or miserliness. Islam guides mankind completely to that which is good, and all praise is for Allâh, the Lord of all that exists.

Note: *Zakatul-Fitr* is discussed under the topic of fasting due to its close relationship to it.
### Categories Of Wealth In Which Zakat Is Obligatory

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The kind of Zakat</th>
<th>The Nisab</th>
<th>Amount of Zakat</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gold and silver</td>
<td>1) Gold: 20 Mithqals or more 2) Silver: 100 Dirhams or more</td>
<td>For both: 2.5% every year</td>
<td>Its amount is eleven Saudi pounds and 7/1 of a pound. The Nisab is equal to 56 Saudi riyals or about 16 dollars (15.175 dollars)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Gold:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For both:</td>
<td>2.5% every</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>20 Mithqals</td>
<td>year</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>or more</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2) Silver:</td>
<td>100 Dirhams</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>or more</td>
<td>or more</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goods meant for selling or buying</td>
<td>The same as gold and silver</td>
<td>2.5% every year</td>
<td>Properties, buildings, cars, and tools – all these are included if they are meant for sale</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What grows out of the earth from crops</td>
<td>60 Sr's</td>
<td>One-tenth for what is watered by rains and One-twentieth for what is watered through toil</td>
<td>This applies to fruits, such as dates and raisins, and to vegetables as well. Zakat is according to their value when the year ends. (One Sr is equal to four handfuls of a man of average built – his hands should be full)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Livestock: sheep and cows</td>
<td>40 sheep, 1 sheep every year.</td>
<td>If there are more than 40 then there is no more due until there are 121 sheep, in which case the Zakat is 2 sheep. The next level is 201 sheep, in which case the Zakat is 3 sheep. Then if there are 301 sheep, there is one sheep that is given for Zakat, for every 100 sheep. If there are more than 30 cows then there is no other Zakat until there reaches 40 cows, in which the Zakat is a cow 2 years of age. And so on, for every 30 the Zakat is a cow 5 years of age, and for every 40 the Zakat is a cow 2 years of age.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>30 cows</td>
<td>For cows: a cow that is five years of age.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## The Zakat Of Camels

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The Nisab</th>
<th>The Amount Of Zakat That Must Be Paid</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>From To</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 - 9</td>
<td>1 Sheep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 - 14</td>
<td>2 Sheep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 - 19</td>
<td>3 Sheep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 - 24</td>
<td>4 Sheep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25 - 35</td>
<td>One female camel that has completed her first year and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>has entered upon her second one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36 - 45</td>
<td>One female camel that has completed her second year and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>has entered upon her third one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46 - 60</td>
<td>One female camel that has completed her third year and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>has entered upon her fourth one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61 - 75</td>
<td>One female camel that has completed her fourth year and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>has entered upon her fifth one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76 - 90</td>
<td>Two female camels that have completed their second year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>and have entered upon their third one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>91 - 120</td>
<td>Two female camels that have completed their third year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>and have entered upon their fourth one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>More than</td>
<td>For every fifty, one that is in her fourth year, and for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120</td>
<td>every forty, one that is in her third year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Fourth Pillar: Fasting

1) Fasting means for one to abstain – for a set period – from food, drink, and sex, seeking closeness to Allāh thereby.

2) The time of the fast: From the beginning of dawn until the sun sets.

3) Fasting the month of Ramadhan is obligatory and is the fourth Pillar of Islam.

4) Fasting Ramadhan is obligatory upon every sane Muslim adult who is able to perform the fast – this applies to both men and women.

5) There are four conditions that, if fulfilled, make the fast obligatory:

   i) Islam: The fast is not obligatory upon the disbeliever until he accepts Islam.

   ii) Sanity: Therefore an insane person does not have to fast, at least not until he is cured.

   iii) Adulthood, meaning that one has reached puberty. The young person who has not reached puberty does not have to fast; however, when a child is able to fast, he should be ordered to do so, so that he may become used to it.

   iv) The ability to fast: the one who is unable to fast – such as the very old person or the one who is so sick that hope is lost for his cure – can instead feed a sick person for each day of fasting that he misses.

6) There are six conditions for one’s fast to be correct:

   i) Islam: Fasting is not acceptable from a disbeliever until he accepts Islam.

   ii) Sanity: Fasting is not accepted from the insane person until he becomes sane.

   iii) Tamyeez (discernment): Fasting is not accepted from someone who is so young that he lacks discernment (the

conditions for discernment are mentioned in books of Fiqh.

iv) That menstrual blood ceases to come out: Therefore fasting is not accepted from a menstruating woman until her blood ceases to flow.

v) That postnatal bleeding stops: Therefore fasting is not accepted from a woman who is experiencing postnatal bleeding, not until she is purified.

vi) Making intention in the night for the next day of fasting – for all of the days of fasting: and this is compulsory. Fasting is not accepted without intention, and intention is made in the heart. The exception here is voluntary fasting, for it doesn’t require intention from the night before.

7) The Sunnah Elements Of Fasting Are Six:

a) Delaying the late-night (Sahur) meal until the last part of the night, as long as one does not fear that the time of dawn will arrive.

b) Hastening to break the fast when one is sure that the sun has set.

c) Increasing in good deeds, voluntary prayers, charity, recitation of the Qur’ān, remembrance, supplication, and the seeking of forgiveness from Allāh Almighty.

d) If someone curses the fasting person, rather than curse him back, he should simply say, “Indeed I am fasting.” He should reciprocate the evil done to him with a good deed, so as to achieve a reward and remain safe from sinning.

e) Just before breaking fast, one should invoke Allāh Almighty with those invocations that he wishes to make, such as the following one:

("اللهُمَّ ضَعِّفْ لَّيْ وَفَعِلْ مَا يَشَاءْ، وَأَقْتُلِبْ مِنْهُ ثَمَانَيْنَ أَنْتَ أَنتَ السُّبْحَانَ اللَّهِ الْعَلِيمُ")

O Allāh, for You I have fasted, with Your sustenance did I break my fast, and so accept from me; indeed, You are All-Hearing, All-Knowing.

f) Breaking fast with ripe dates; if they are not available, then with
dry ones; and if they are not available, then with water.

8) The rulings of those who do not have to fast in Ramadhan:

There are four kinds of people who do not have to fast during Ramadhan:

i) The sick person who is harmed by fasting and the traveler who is permitted to shorten his prayer – not fasting is better for these two groups, but they have to make up for their fasts at a later date. And if they fast, then their fast is correct and sufficient.

ii) Menstruating women and women who are experiencing postnatal bleeding; they shouldn’t fast, and they have to make up for those fasts that they miss; however, in their case, if they do fast, their fast is not correct and not sufficient.

iii) The pregnant and breast-feeding mother: if they fear that fasting will have negative repercussions on their child, then they may break their fast and make up for it later, but they do not have to feed a poor person for every day they missed. And if they fast, then that is sufficient and correct; however, if their fears are not related to their child, but to their own selves, then they may still break their fast and make up for it later, but they do not have to feed a poor person for every day they missed.

iv) One who is not able to fast may also break his fast – such as one who has reached the age of decrepitude or one whose sickness is so severe that doctors have lost hope for his cure. Such people may break their fast and must feed a poor person for each day that they missed. The amount of food they must give is approximately a kilo and a half of a staple food in one’s country.

The Recommended Fasts

1) Any six days in the month of Shawwal (the month after Ramadhan): if one fasts those days as well as the month of Ramadhan, then one has completed his rewards so that they are equal to fasting for a year.

2) Fasting Monday and Thursday, for those are the two days that one’s deeds are displayed before Allâh.

3) Fasting three days from every month: when one does this his reward is equal to fasting for a year. This is because a good deed is
multiplied ten times. Regarding these three days, it is preferred that one fasts what are known as the “white days” – the 13th, 14th, and 15th – of every (lunar) month.

4) Fasting the first nine days of Thul-Hijjah, the most emphasized of which is the 9th, the day of ‘Arcfab for one who is not making the pilgrimage.

5) Fasting the month of Muharram, and the most emphasized days for fasting in that month are the ninth and the tenth, which is the day of ‘Ashura.

When Is It Prohibited To Fast?

1) Fasting the day of doubt, which is the 30th day of Sha'ban (it is the day before the month of fasting, Ramadhan, begins).

2) Fasting on the two days of ‘Eid – ‘Eidul-Adha and ‘Eidul-Fitr.

3) Fasting the days of Tashreeq, which are the 11th, 12th, and 13th of Thul-Hijjah, the exceptions are for those performing Hajj At-Tamattu’ and for the one performing Qiran, but is not able to find the Hady (sacrifice).

4) It is disliked to single out Friday for fasting, unless one fasts on Thursday or Saturday as well, in which case there is no harm.

5) A woman performing a voluntary fast without the permission of her husband.

Some Additional Points Related To Fasting

1) One must fast Ramadhan, having faith and seeking his reward with Allah, and for no other reason.

2) It may happen that as one is fasting, he involuntarily has a nosebleed or an injury; he also might vomit or drink water or anything else unintentionally – all of the above do not spoil one’s fast as long as they are not done on purpose.

3) While one is sexually impure, he may intend to fast, and then perform Ghusl after the beginning of dawn. As for the menstruating woman and the woman experiencing post-natal bleeding, if they become purified before dawn, they must perform Ghusl, perform Maghrib and ‘Isba’ prayers and then fast.

4) If a woman experiencing postnatal bleeding becomes purified
before the completion of 40 days, she should perform *Ghusl*, after which she may pray and fast, and furthermore, she becomes lawful to her husband.

5) A fasting person may clean his teeth, using *Sitwak* (a stick from the *Arak* tree used for cleaning teeth), at the beginning and end of the day. It is Sunnah for the fasting person to use *Sitwak* just as it is Sunnah to do so for the one who is not fasting.

6) The fasting person, as well as others, must perform all compulsory acts of worship, while abstaining from all that is forbidden – obeying orders and staying away from prohibited matters, so that one may be among those who are successful and whose deeds are accepted.

7) One should take advantage of the blessed hours in Ramadhan to perform good deeds – prayer, charity, recitation of Qur’ān, remembrance of Allāh, supplication, the seeking of forgiveness from Allāh, and the performance of *Umrah*. Time in Ramadhan, more so than any other time, is like a planting-ground for Allāh’s worshippers to be used to purify their hearts from falsehood.

8) A fasting person, as well as others, must protect their limbs from sins, in terms of false speech, the forbidden look, listening to that which is forbidden, eating or drinking that which is forbidden, walking toward that which is forbidden, or doing anything that is forbidden. One avoids such matters so that his fast may be accepted, and so that he deserves forgiveness and deserves being saved from the Hellfire.

9) If one is permitted to break his fast in Ramadhan because he is sick or a traveler, he is not permitted to fast that day for someone else, such as one who fasts for someone who is deceased because that deceased person made a vow to fast but did not perform it before dying.

10) If one travels so that he doesn’t have to fast, then it is forbidden for him to travel and to break his fast; in this case, he must fast.

11) If fasting is obligatory on someone who is about to eat due to forgetfulness or ignorance, then it becomes the obligation of one who sees him to notify and remind him of his duty, for that is from helping one another to goodness and righteousness.
12) One’s fast is not rendered void if a fly or dust or smoke goes down his throat by accident (i.e., not on purpose), because these are matters that are not possible to avoid.

13) Whoever eats, thinking that dawn has not begun or that the sun has set and later on realizes that he was wrong, his fast is correct because he was ignorant regarding the time.[1]

14) Following in the way of the Prophet ﷺ and seeking Allâh’s reward, one should be especially generous in the month of Ramadhan and one should recite as much Qur‘ân as one is able to.

15) From the ways of achieving forgiveness in the month of Ramadhan is to fast it, stand late during its nights to pray, stand on the night of Qadr to pray, recite the Qur‘ân, remember Allâh, supplicate to Him, seek His forgiveness, repent to Him, feed those who are breaking their fast, and give charity.

16) The best charity is that which is given in Ramadhan.

17) When making up for fasts that one missed during Ramadhan, it is recommended to fast on continuous days, but it is not obligatory. It is also recommended to hasten to make up for those fasts.

18) If one missed fasts in Ramadhan on long hot days, it is permissible to make up for those fasts in the winter on days that are short, and vice versa.

19) If one is excused from fasting on a certain day, he may fast it anyway, as long as doing so is not burdensome, for Allâh says:

وَأَن تَصُومُواْ خَيْرًا لَّمَّا صَوَمْتُمْ

And that you fast, it is better for you.[2]

20) Fasting is a spiritual school, in which one trains his soul to be patient.

21) From the special qualities of the last ten days of Ramadhan, it is recommended to do the following during them:

---

[1] This is the opinion of Shaikh Ibn ‘Uthaimin; the opposing view, however, is held by the majority of the people of knowledge. Shaikh Ibn Baz, for example, holds that though such a person is not sinning, he must make up for that fast.

The Fourth Pillar: Fasting

i) Staying awake during the night praying and worshipping.

ii) Waking up one’s family to pray.

iii) Staying away from women and applying oneself to worship.

22) Fasting is also like a hospital for many kinds of sicknesses; in a Hadith, the Prophet said,

«صوموا تصبحوا»

Fast, and you will be in good health.

It was recorded by Ibn As-Sunni and Abu Nu‘aym. As-Suyuti graded it as Hasan.

23) During the night of ‘Eidul-Fitr, and until the ‘Eid Prayer, Muslims are recommended to say the Takbir and to say it in Masjids, homes, and marketplaces, for Allâh says:

(He wants that you) must complete the same number of days, and that you must magnify Allâh [i.e., to say Takbir (Allâbu Akbar; Allâh is the Most Great) on seeing the crescent of the months of Ramadhan and Shawwal] for having guided you so that you may be grateful to Him[1]

The special way of saying the Takbir on this occasion is to say, “Allâbu Akbar, Allâbu Akbar. Laa Ilaa Illâlah, Wallâhu Akbar, Allâhu Akbar, wa Lillabil-Hamid (Allâh is the Most Great, Allâh is the Most Great; none has the right to be worshipped but Allâh, and Allâh is the Most Great. Allâh is the Most Great, and to Him belongs all praise).

The Special Qualities Of Ramadhan

1) Fasting Ramadhan is the fourth pillar of Islam.

2) There are special night prayers that one should perform during Ramadhan, praying them with faith and seeking reward from Allâh — the Tarawih prayer, along with the late-night (Tabaajud) prayers in the last ten days.

3) The Qur’an was revealed in the month of Ramadhan:

[1] (Al-Baqarah 2:185)
The month of Ramadhan in which was revealed the Qur'ān, a guidance for mankind and clear proofs for the guidance and the criterion (between right and wrong).

4) During Ramadhan, there is a night called the Night of Qadr, which is better than one thousand months, meaning that it is better than eighty-three years and four months.

5) The greater Battle of Badr took place in Ramadhan, a battle in which Allāh made clear for us on its morning the distinction between truth and falsehood. Islam and its adherents defeated Shirk and its adherents.

6) Makkah was conquered during Ramadhan, and that was a great help from Allāh for His Messenger ﷺ, because people entered Allāh’s religion in flocks.

7) The doors of Paradise and mercy are opened in Ramadhan, while the doors of the Hellfire are closed, and the devils are shackled therein.

8) The smell that emanates from the fasting person’s mouth is better and purer to Allāh than the smell of musk.

9) The angels ask forgiveness for those who are fasting until they break their fast.

10) In a hadith, it is related that a voluntary act in Ramadhan is equal to a compulsory one, and that a compulsory act during Ramadhan is equal to seventy compulsory acts that are performed outside of Ramadhan. Ibn Khuzaimah, Al-Baihaqi, and others relate this.

11) During Ramadhan, mercy descends, sins are discharged, and supplications are answered.

12) The beginning of Ramadhan is mercy, its middle is forgiveness, and its end is freedom from the Hellfire.

13) It is a month of patience, and the reward for patience is Paradise.

[1] (Al-Baqrāt 2:185)
14) Those who fast are forgiven in the last night of Ramadhan; that is because a worker takes his wages as soon as he finishes his work.

There are many blessings and rewards that are attached to Ramadhan; therefore one must take advantage of its many opportunities by repenting to Allâh and performing good deeds, in the hope that one will be among the successful ones whose deeds are accepted.

Additional Advice You Should Heed Regarding The Fast

1) You should fast the month of Ramadhan out of faith while seeking the reward from Allâh Almighty, so that Allâh will forgive your past sins.

2) Beware, brother Muslim, from breaking any of the fasts of Ramadhan without a valid excuse. But if you do perpetrate that sin, then make up for the day you missed and repent sincerely to Allâh.

3) Stand – may Allâh have mercy on you – and pray the Tarawîh and Tahrîj prayers during Ramadhan, especially on the Night of Qadr, but do so with faith while seeking the reward from Allâh, so that He forgives you your past sins.

4) Make sure that your food, drink, and clothing are not only lawful, but are also lawfully derived, so that your deeds and supplications may be accepted. Beware of fasting from what is lawful and breaking your fast with what is unlawful.

5) When the time arrives for breaking the fast, feed others who are fasting as well, so that you may achieve a reward similar to their reward.

6) Be steadfast in performing the five obligatory prayers on time and in congregation, to achieve their rewards, and so that Allâh protects you through them.

7) Give much charity because the best charity is that which is given during Ramadhan.

8) Beware of wasting your time without doing good deeds, for you will be asked and held accountable regarding lost time; furthermore, you will be recompensed for the deeds you may have perpetrated during that lost time.
9) Perform ‘Umrah during Ramadhan, for ‘Umrah during Ramadhan is equal to Hajj in reward.

10) In order to help facilitate your fast during the day, partake of a meal in the last part of the night, as long as you do not fear that dawn has begun.

11) To achieve Allâh’s love for you, hasten to break your fast when you are sure that the sun has set.

12) Before the time of Fajr, perform Ghusl from sexual impurity if you need to take it, so that you can perform worship in its time.

13) Take advantage of the fact that you are alive in Ramadhan by occupying yourself with the best that has descended during that month: recitation of the Noble Qur’ân, contemplation of its meanings, so that it may be a proof for you with your Lord and an intercessor for you on the Day of Judgement.

14) Protect your tongue from lying, cursing, backbiting, or spreading false rumors, because all of these take away from your reward for fasting.

15) Do not allow fasting to get to your head, making you feel that you are so righteous that you have the right, for example, to show anger to others; rather, fasting should be a means of making your soul feel humble and tranquil and at rest.

16) Come out of your fast with fear of Allâh, knowing that when you do deeds, He sees all of your deeds, whether you perform them in open or in secret. Demonstrate your gratitude for His many favors and because He has guided you to righteousness, by applying all of His commands and staying away from all of His prohibitions.

17) At all times, and especially during Ramadhan remember Allâh, seek His forgiveness, ask for Paradise, and seek protection from the Hellfire. You should especially perform these deeds when you are fasting, at the time of Sahur and the time when you are breaking your fast; doing good deeds on those occasions will help bring about forgiveness.

18) Supplicate as often as you can, for yourself, your parents, your children, and for all Muslims. Allâh Almighty ordered us to supplicate while guaranteeing the answer Himself.
19) At all times, repent to Allah sincerely, by:
   i) Abandoning the sin you committed.
   ii) Feeling remorse and regret for that sin
   iii) Resolving to never return to that sin in the future.
Indeed Allah forgives the one who repents.
20) Fast six days from Shawwal, for whoever fasts Ramadhan, following it up with six days from Shawwal, then it is as if he has fasted the entire year.\[1\]
21) Fast the day of ‘Arafah, which is the 9th of Thul-Hijjah, which may remove the sins of the previous year, as well as the following year. But if you are performing Hajj and are standing at ‘Arafat, then do not fast on that day, because the Prophet \(\text{ ﷺ} \) stood at ‘Arafat without fasting.
22) Fast the day of ‘Ashura – the 10th of Muharram – along with the 9th as well, so that you may achieve expiation for a year’s sins.
23) Continue to be righteous and to perform good deeds and to have faith after the month of Ramadhan, and until you die:

\[
\text{وَتَوَضَّعْ رَيْبُكَ حَتَّى بَلَىٰكَ الْيَوْمِ الْيَمِينِ}
\]

And worship your Lord until there comes to you the certainty (i.e., death).\[2\]
24) Allow for the effects of worship – such as prayer, fasting, Zakat, Hajj – to appear in your character, by sincerely repenting to Allah and by leaving those habits that are contrary to the Share‘ah.
25) Send many blessings and salutations upon the Messenger of Allah \(\text{ ﷺ} \) – O Allah, send blessings and salutations upon Muhammad, his family, his Companions, and his followers until the Day of Judgement. O Allah, make us, and all the Muslims among those who fast Ramadhan, and stand in prayer during its nights, having faith and seeking our reward from You. O Allah, forgive our past and future sins.

And know – may Allah have mercy on you – for a fact that the

\[1\] Muslim, in a Hadith related by Abu Qatadah.
\[2\] (Al-Hujr 15:99)
Muslims agree that fasting Ramadhan is obligatory. Whoever denies that fasting Ramadhan is obligatory is an apostate, a disbeliever who is asked to repent. If he repents and acknowledges that fasting is obligatory, then that is well; if not, then he is killed as a disbeliever.\[1\]

Fasting was legislated in the second year after Hijrah (The Prophet’s migration to Al-Madinah), so the Prophet \( \text{ﷺ} \) fasted Ramadhan for nine years.

Fasting is compulsory upon every sane adult Muslim. Therefore it is not obligatory upon the disbeliever, nor is it accepted from him were he to perform it, until he accepts Islam. Fasting is also not obligatory upon the child who has not reached adulthood. Adulthood in Islam means the completion of fifteen years or the time when pubic hairs begin to grow, or the discharge of semen during a wet dream, and there are other signs as well; for a female, there is an additional sign of adulthood, and that is menstruation. So when one of the above signs appear, the child then becomes an adult, and fasting becomes compulsory upon him.

As for the child, he should be ordered to fast when it is deemed that he can handle the fast and will not be harmed thereby, so that he can get used to fasting. Fasting is also not obligatory upon one who has lost his mind and has gone insane. Therefore if a person in old age begins to speak nonsense and loses the ability to distinguish between different matters, as normal people are able to do, neither fasting nor feeding the poor is obligatory upon him.

**Some Of The Benefits And Wisdom Behind The Legislation Of Fasting:**

Al-Hakeem is one of Allâh’s Names, and Al-Hakeem is One Who is described as having wisdom. \( \text{Hikmah} \) – wisdom – means perfecting matters and placing them where they belong. One of the implications of this name is this: everything that Allâh created and legislated is for a far-reaching wisdom – of which some have knowledge and others do not.

\[1\] From a dissertation on Fasting written by Shaikh Muhammad bin Salih Al-'Uthaimin
There is tremendous wisdom behind fasting, which Allâh has legislated and made obligatory upon his worshippers, and it also has special benefits; here are some of them:

1) Fasting is a form of worship through which the worshipper attains closeness to his Lord; he leaves those things that he loves, things he is innately made to love – in terms of food, drink, and sexual intercourse – so that he may achieve the pleasure of his Lord and success in the next life. So through the fast, what becomes manifest is one’s love for those matters his Lord loves over those matters he loves himself, and one’s preference for the Hereafter over this world.

2) Fasting leads to righteousness and a fear of Allâh, but only if the one fasting does what is required of him during his fast. Allâh Almighty says:

'O you who believe! Fasting is prescribed for you as it was prescribed for those before you, that you may be pious. The fasting person is ordered to have Taqua (piety) which means to apply Allâh’s Commands and to stay away from His prohibitions, an achievement which is the main purpose behind fasting. Torturing the one fasting by making him stay away from food, drink, and sexual intercourse, is not the intent of the fast, for the Prophet ﷺ said:

Whoever does not leave false speech, acting according to false speech, and ignorance, then Allâh has no need for him to leave his food and drink.

What false speech is referring to in this Hadith is all speech that is forbidden – including lying, backbiting, cursing, and even forbidden deeds. Applying false speech means all forbidden actions – such as attacking others using means of treachery, cheating, physically

[1] (Al-Baqarah 2:183)
[2] Related by Al-Bukhari
striking, usurping wealth, and so on. This also embraces listening to music, which is forbidden. Ignorance means foolishness, and here it means staying far away from right guidance in both speech and action. If the one who is fasting acts according to his knowledge of the above-mentioned verse and Hadith, then his fasting will help him grow as a person, solidifying his character and manners. Such a person will come out of Ramadhan greatly changed, with changes that will appear in his self, his manners, and his dealings.

3) The rich person, through fasting, gains an appreciation of Allâh’s great favors upon him. Allâh made it easy for him to get food, drink, and a wife (or wives) – all things which Allâh made permissible in His Shari’ah and made possible for such a person by His Divine Decree. Therefore one should thank his Lord for His many favors and remember his poor brother who cannot have the things he has, and show generosity, giving charity and help to his poor brother.

4) Through fasting, one learns self-control thus keeping his desires in check, so that one develops the ability to lead his self to all that is good for it, in terms of happiness in this world and the next. In this way, one stays away from the characteristics of men who act as beasts do – those who are not able to control their desires and lusts.

5) There are many health benefits that are related to the fast: one learns to take smaller portions of food; one gives a break to his digestion system for a certain period of time, allowing for certain harmful waste matter to leave his body.

The Sick Person And The Traveler: Should They Fast?

Allâh Almighty says:

\[\text{And whoever is ill or on a journey, the same number of days which one did not observe Sawm (fasts) must be made up for from other days. Allâh intends for you ease, and He does not want to make things difficult for you.}^{[1]}\]

\[\text{\scriptsize\textsuperscript{[1]} (Al-Baqarab 2:185)}\]
In regards to fasting, there are two kinds of sick people:

1) One whose sickness stays with him continuously, with no hope of it leaving, such as cancer. Such a person does not have to fast, for in his case, it is not generally hoped that he will later on be able to perform it. Rather, he must feed a poor person for each day that he misses; he can either gather a number of poor people corresponding to the number of days he missed, and then feed them lunch or dinner, which is what Anas bin Malik used to do when he reached old age. The other option is for one to divide food for poor people according to the number of days he missed; each poor person gets approximately a kilo and a half of a staple food in his country - such as dates, rice, and so on.

2) One whose sickness is sudden, and temporary, such as a fever. There are three situations for a sick person in this category:

   i) Fasting is not difficult for him, nor does it harm him; in this case, he must fast because he has no excuse not to.

   ii) Fasting is difficult for him, but does not harm him. It is disliked for such a person to fast, for by fasting in this situation, one deviates from Allâh's exception and allowance, while also deviating from showing compassion to his own self.

   iii) Fasting harms him, in which case it is forbidden for him to fast, because he is bringing harm upon himself. Allâh Almighty says:

   
   And do not kill yourselves (nor kill one another). Surely, Allâh is Most Merciful to you.\[^{[1]}\]

   And:

   
   And do not throw yourselves into destruction.\[^{[2]}\]

   And in a Hadith related from the Prophet ﷺ, he ﷺ said:

   
   [1] (An-Nisa’ 4:29)

There is no harm to one’s own self and no harm to others.[1]

How does one know whether fasting will harm a sick person? One knows either because the sick person himself feels that he is being harmed or because a trusted doctor informs him that in his situation, fasting is bad for him. A sick person from this category who misses fasts must make up for the days he missed when he gets well, and if he dies before getting well, then he is absolved from the days he missed because his obligation is to fast a number of other days, and he never reached those other days.

The Categories For The Traveler

1) One whose intention behind traveling is to avoid having to fast. It is forbidden for this person to break his fast because trickery in one’s obligatory Islamic duties does not absolve one from having to perform them.

2) One who doesn’t have the said intention; there are three situations for this person:

i) Fasting is extremely difficult for him, in which case it is forbidden for him to fast. When the Prophet ﷺ was fasting during the conquest of Makkah, he learned that people were finding it extremely difficult to fast and were only waiting to see what he did. After ‘Asr, he ﷺ called for a container of water and he ﷺ drank from it, while the people observed him. It was later said to him, “Some of the people have fasted,” and he said:

«أَوْلَيْكَ الْعُصْامَةُ أَوْلَيْكَ الْعَصْامَةُ»

They are indeed the disobedient ones; they are indeed the disobedient ones.[2]

ii) Fasting is not extremely difficult for him, but is nonetheless difficult. It is disliked for him to fast, for by fasting, he deviates from Allâh’s exception and licence and he deviates from showing compassion to his own self.

---

[1] Ibn Majah and Al-Hakim. An-Nawawi said, “It has different chains, each one strengthens the other.”

[2] Related by Muslim
iii) Fasting is not difficult for him at all, in which case one does what is easier for him in terms of fasting or not fasting, for Allâh Almighty says:

\[
\text{يَسْتَيْضُعُ الْمَسْرَ
\]}

Allâh intends for you ease, and He does not want to make things difficult for you.\(^1\)

In this verse, “intends” carries the meaning of “loves.” If the two choices carry equal weight, then fasting is better, for that is the practice of the Prophet ﷺ.

In \textit{Sahih Muslim} it is recorded that Abu Ad-Darda’ said, “We went out during Ramadhan on a very hot day with the Prophet ﷺ, so severe was the heat that one of us would put his hand on his head. The only ones who were fasting among us were the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ and ‘Abdullah bin Rawahah.”

One is considered to be a traveler as soon as one leaves his country and remains so as long as he doesn’t return to it. Even if one stays in a city for a certain period during his travel, he is still considered to be a traveler as long as his intention is to not stay there after he is finished with his mission for traveling there in the first place. Hence he has licence to do what the traveler does, even if he is staying in a specific place for a long period of time.\(^2\) No specific period for traveling after which one is no longer considered to be a traveler has been related from the Prophet ﷺ, and as such, travel and its rulings apply until proof is given to cancel it out or to cancel out its rulings.

The licences of the travel apply to all kinds of travelers – those who are traveling to perform \(\text{Haj} \) or \(\text{Umrah} \), those who are visiting relatives, those that are traveling for business, and so on, and also those who are continuously traveling, such as the long-distance taxi drivers: as soon as they leave their country, they are travelers, and they are like all other travelers, in that they may miss days of

\(^1\) (\textit{Al-Baqarah} 2:185)

\(^2\) This is the opinion held by some scholars; others hold that if he stays in a city for a period of four days or less, he is considered to be traveler, but if he stays in a city for more than four days, he is considered to be a dweller, in terms of Islamic rulings.
Ramadhan (those days that they are in travel), shorten four-unit prayers to two units, and combine between prayers when there is a need – between Zuhr and ‘Asr and between Maghrib and ‘Isba’. Missing a fast in their case is better for them than fasting when it is easier for them, for instance, because they can make up for those days in the winter. Such drivers and others like them have a city that is theirs, and so they are considered as dwellers when they are in that city, and they take on all of the rulings of dwellers. And when they are outside of that city, they are travelers and take on all of the rulings of travelers.

There Are Seven Matters That Spoil One’s Fast, Rendering It Void

1) Sexual intercourse – inserting the male private part into the female private part, so whenever a fasting person has sexual intercourse, his fast is null. If one engages in sexual intercourse during day in Ramadhan – when fasting is compulsory – then, because of the enormity of his action, the harsh expiation applies to him. This means that he must free a slave; if he is not able to do so, then he must fast two continuous months; and if he is not able to do that, then he must feed sixty poor people. But if one engages in sexual intercourse during the day of Ramadhan when fasting is not obligatory upon him, for instance, when he is traveling, then he has to make up for the fast without having to make any atonement.

2) The discharge of semen due to kissing, hugging, and so on. But if one kisses without semen discharging, then there is nothing upon him.

3) Eating and drinking, which means that food reaches one’s inside. So based on this definition, eating and drinking include food entering through the mouth or through the nose – whatever the kind of food or drink. The fasting person is not allowed to breathe in the smoke of incense, so that it reaches his inside, because smoke is considered to have mass. As for smelling things that exude pleasant fragrances, there is no harm in that.

4) That which carries the meaning of eating or drinking, such as nourishing injections that replace food and drink. But if the contents of an injection are not nourishing, then one’s fast is not
affected in any way, regardless of whether it enters a vein or a muscle.

5) Blood exiting because of cupping – and bloodletting of any kind that has a similar effect to cupping – carries the same ruling. But if one gives a small amount of blood for testing, then one’s fast is not affected in any way, because the body is not weakened when a small amount of blood is withdrawn as opposed to cupping and the like.

6) Vomiting on purpose.

7) Blood discharging from a woman whose menstrual cycle is beginning and a woman experiencing postnatal bleeding.

These matters that nullify one’s fast only nullify it when three conditions are fulfilled:

1) One is knowledgeable of the ruling, and knowledgeable of the time.

2) One remembers.

3) One has a choice.

So if one is cupped, thinking that it does not affect his fast, then his fast is correct, because he is ignorant of the correct ruling. Indeed Allâh Almighty says:

﴾And there is no sin on you if you make a mistake therein, except in regard to what your hearts deliberately intend﴾[1]

And:

﴿“Our Lord! Punish us not if we forget or fall into error.”﴿[2]

In answer to the supplication of this last verse, Allâh said, “Indeed, I have done so (forgiven).”

In the Two Sahîbs, it is recorded that ‘Adi bin Hatim said he put two strings, one black and the other white – underneath his pillow. He began to eat and look at them, and when one of them would appear

[1] (Al-Ahzab 33:5)
distinct from the other, he would stop eating, thinking that he was applying this verse:

\[
\text{\textit{الثَّانِيفُ،}}
\]

until the white thread (light) of dawn appears to you distinct from the black thread (darkness of night).\(^{[1]}\)

He then informed the Prophet ﷺ of what he did, and the Prophet ﷺ said:

\[
\text{\textit{إِنْماَ دَلِّلْتُ عَلَيْكُمُ الْيَتِيمَ، وَمَارَّةَ اللَّيْلِ}}
\]

Indeed that is the whiteness of the day and the blackness of the night.

Yet the Prophet ﷺ did not order him to repeat his fast. So, if one eats, wrongly thinking that dawn has not yet begun, his fast is still correct. Similarly, if one eats at night, thinking that the sun has set, but later finding out that he was wrong, his fast is correct, because he is ignorant regarding the time.\(^{[2]}\)

In Sahih Al-Bukhari, it is recorded that Asma’ bint Abu Bakr, may Allâh be pleased with her, said, “During the life of the Prophet ﷺ, we continued to eat on a cloudy day and then the sun rose.” If making up for the missed day were obligatory in this case, the Prophet ﷺ would have pointed that out. Allâh has completed this religion, and so if the Prophet ﷺ clarified this issue, his Companions would have transmitted that information, because Allâh Almighty guaranteed to preserve this religion. Since the Companions related nothing in this regard, we know that the Prophet ﷺ did not order him to repeat his fast. Allâh Almighty guaranteed to preserve this religion. Since the Companions related nothing in this regard, we know that the Prophet ﷺ said nothing about this issue. If he didn’t say anything, then we know that it is not compulsory. And because it is an important matter to transmit to future generations, it is not possible that the Companions forgot to relate it. If one forgets that he is fasting during Ramadhan and consequently eats something, his fast is not affected in any way, for the Prophet ﷺ said:

\[\text{(Al-Baqarah 2:187)}\]

\[\text{[1] (Al-Baqarah 2:187)}\]

\[\text{[2] This is the opinion held by Shaikh Ibn ‘Uthaimin; the second opinion, which is held by the majority of the people of knowledge – including Shaikh Ibn Baz – states that although there is no sin upon such a person, he must make up for the missed day. And this opinion is safer.}\]
Whoever forgets while he is fasting, and then eats or drinks, then let him complete his fast, for indeed it was Allāh Who fed him and gave him drink. (Agreed upon)

When one is forced or compelled to eat or drink; to gargle, when the water reaches his stomach; to take eye drops, and the nourishment thereof reaches one’s insides; or when one has a wet dream and his semen discharges - in all of the above situations one’s fast is correct, because they all happened without one having a choice.

When one cleans his teeth using Siwak, his fast is not nullified, because using the Siwak is Sunnah, both for one who is fasting and one who is not fasting, and at all times, including the daytime as well. The fasting person is also allowed to reduce the effects of extreme heat by cooling himself down with water. The Prophet ﷺ “used to pour water over his head when he was fasting, because of thirst.” And when Ibn ‘Umar, may Allāh be pleased with him, was fasting, he dampened a garment and then threw it over himself. This is from the mercy that Allāh has for us – and all praise belongs to Allāh, for His blessings and making it easy to follow legislation.

At-Tarawih (Ramadhan Night Prayers)\(^\text{[1]}\)

At-Tarawih are those units of prayer that are performed in congregation during Ramadhan; the time for this prayer is anytime between ‘Isha’ prayer and dawn. The Prophet ﷺ encouraged us to stand up for prayer at night during Ramadhan, saying:

\[
\text{من فَاضَنَّ رَضِيَّةَ إِيمَانًا وَاحْتِضَنَّا عَفْرًا لَّهُ مَا تُقَادِمُ مِن دَينِهِ}
\]

Whoever stands (for prayer) in Ramadhan, with faith, and seeking his reward from Allāh, he is forgiven for his previous sins.

In Sahih Al-Bukhari it is recorded that ‘Aishah, may Allāh be pleased with her, said, “During one night, the Prophet ﷺ stood in the Masjid (to pray), and people followed him in his prayer. Then he prayed the

\(^{[1]}\) This section is taken from a work written by Shaikh Ibn Al-Uthaimin.
next night, and many people attended. Then the people gathered on the third and fourth night, but the Prophet ﷺ did not come out to them. When the morning came, he ﷺ said:

*I saw what you did, and nothing prevented me from coming out to you except that I feared it would be made obligatory upon you.*

This happened during Ramadhan.

The Sunnah is to limit this prayer to eleven units, making *Taslim* after every two units. When ‘Aishah, may Allâh be pleased with her, was asked about how the Prophet ﷺ would pray during Ramadhan, she said, “Neither in Ramadhan nor at any other time would he perform more than eleven units.” (Agreed upon).

In *Al-Muwatta* it is reported from Muhammad bin Yusuf (who is trustworthy with a sound memory for transmitting *Hadîth*) from Sa‘ib bin Yazid, may Allâh be pleased with him, (who was a Companion), that ‘Umar bin Al-Khattab, my Allâh be pleased with him, ordered Ubai bin Ka'b and Tamim Ad-Dari to lead the people in eleven units of prayer.

One doesn’t do wrong, however, by praying more than eleven units, because when the Prophet ﷺ was asked about standing in the night to pray, he ﷺ said:

Two (units) at a time, and if one of you fears the arrival of dawn, let him pray one unit, making odd that which he prayed. (It was recorded in the Two *Sahîhs*)

Yet praying that number of units which is related in the Sunnah while performing them slowly – as long as doing so is not difficult upon the people – is better and more complete.

Some people go against what is legislated when they recite in a quick and hasty manner, and if such hastiness leads to leaving out a
compulsory element of prayer or a pillar of prayer, then one’s prayer is nullified.

Many of the Imams in different Masjids do not take their time when leading the Tarawih prayer, and this is a mistake on their part, because an Imam is not praying for himself only; rather, he is praying for himself and for others. He is like a governor whose responsibility is to do that which is best for his people. The people of knowledge have said that it is hated for the Imam to recite in such a quick fashion that his followers are prevented from what is obligatory upon them.

Muslims should establish the Tarawih prayer – without wasting the Tarawih prayer by going from Masjid to Masjid in one night. For whoever stands with the Imam until he leaves, the reward for standing the entire night is written for him even if he then goes to sleep.

Women may also attend the Tarawih prayer as long as no temptation is caused by their presence. They should leave the place of prayer in a modest way, and not in a way to attract others by adorning themselves, or by wearing makeup and perfume.
**Zakatul-Fitr**[1]

1) It is a compulsory form of Zakat that is legislated because of the breaking of the fast after Ramadhan.

2) It is compulsory upon every Muslim, for himself and for each person that it is obligatory for him to spend upon.

3) Its amount: One Sa' (a measurement, which is further explained below) from the most prevalent kind of food in the country. One must give this charity if he has enough of the given food for himself and his family for the day of ‘Eid and its night.

4) One Sa’ is equal to four Mudds. One Mudd is what can be placed in two average-sized hands. A Sa’, then, is equal to approximately three kilograms.

5) If one can only find a portion of a Sa’, then he should give it – and fear Allâh as much as you are able to.

6) It is recommended to give this Zakat on behalf of a child in his mother’s womb; however, doing so is not obligatory.

7) It is best to give that kind of food that is most beneficial to the poor.

8) One must give this Zakat before the ‘Eid prayer, and it is permissible to give it a day or two in advance. It is forbidden, though, to delay it until after the ‘Eid prayer without a legitimate Islamic excuse. If one delays giving it until after the prayer without an excuse, then it is not accepted from him; instead, it is considered to be a regular kind of charity. But if one delays it with an excuse, then there is no harm, such as one who is in a secluded area when ‘Eid arrives: he neither finds the necessary food for Zakatul-Fitr nor someone who would accept it from him.

9) You give Zakatul-Fitr in the area where you live.

10) It is not permissible to give the money value of the food, because doing so goes against the Sunnah.

11) It becomes compulsory to give Zakatul-Fitr when the sun sets

---

[1] Khulasatul-Kalam by Shaikh Al-Jarullah, pp. 16-17. We previously discussed Zakatul-Fitr briefly, and it is mentioned again here because of its relationship to fasting.
on the night before ‘Eid. Therefore if one accepts Islam after
that time, one doesn’t have to give Zakatul-Fitr. If one marries
after the sun sets on that night or has a child, one doesn’t have
to give it on behalf of his wife, and in the second situation, on
behalf of his child. But if any of the above occurs for someone
before the sun sets on the night before ‘Eid, then he must give it
on their behalf as well.

12) It is permissible for a group of people to give their Zakatul-Fitr
to a single person, just as it is permissible for a single person to
give his Zakatul-Fitr to a group of people.

13) The people who may receive Zakatul-Fitr are the same eight
categories that may receive the normal Zakat; those who take
precedence, however, are the poor, the needy, and those in
debt.

14) It is obligatory that the Zakat should to reach the one who
deserves it or his representative on time.
The Fifth Pillar: *Hajj*  
(First, The ‘Umrah)

Before discussing *Hajj*, we must first introduce the reader to a brief outline of the rites of *Umrah*.\(^1\)

1) When the one who wishes to make ‘Umrah reaches the *Miqat*, it is recommended for him to perform *Ghusl* and to clean himself. The same applies to a woman, even if she is menstruating or experiencing postnatal bleeding; the only exception is that she does not perform *Tawaf* around the Ka’bah until she becomes purified and performs *Ghusl*. While preparing to enter into *Ihram* (the sacred state of a pilgrim), a man should apply perfume to his body, but not on the clothes he will be wearing for *Ihram*. In case that one cannot perform *Ghusl* at the *Miqat*, there is no harm in that, but if possible, it is recommended to take a shower when one reaches Makkah and before one performs *Tawaf*.

2) A man should remove all stitched clothing from his body; all he should wear is an *Izar* (lower wrap) and a *Rida’* (upper wrap). It is recommended for these garments to be both white and clean. One’s head (for the man) must remain uncovered. As for a woman, she may wear her regular clothes, clothes that are not meant for adornment or fame.

3) Next, one makes intention in his heart that he is entering upon the rites of *Umrah*, and with his tongue, he says, *Labbaik Bi ‘Umrah* or *Allâhumma Labbaik Bi ‘Umrah* [Here I am, O Allâh (in response to Your call), for ‘Umrah]. If, because one is sick or is afraid of an enemy or something similar, and fears that he will not be able to complete the rites, one may stipulate, saying, “If I am prevented by some obstruction, then my place is where You have confined me.” In the *Hadith* of Dhubar’ah bint Az-Zubair, may Allâh be pleased with her, she said, “O Messenger of Allâh, indeed I wish to make *Hajj*, yet I am sick.” He said:

\[
\text{ٍحَجَّيْتُ وَإِخْتِلَٰفُ يِنِيُّ ﺔِنْ ﺔِنِيُّ حِبَّيْتُ حِبَّيْتُ} \\
\]

\(^1\) Taken from *Sifatul-Umrah*, by Shaikh ‘Abdul-‘Aziz bin ‘Abdullah bin Baz
Perform \( 	ext{He}_{\text{ij}} \) and stipulate “My place is where You have prevented me.” (Agreed upon).

Then one should begin to utter the \( 	ext{Talbiyyah} \) of the Prophet:

\[
\text{بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَٰنِ الرَّحِيمِ}
\]

Here I am, O Allah (in response to Your call), here I am. Here I am, You have no partner, here I am. Verily all praise, grace, and sovereignty belong to You. You have no partner.

One should repeat this \( 	ext{Talbiyyah} \) often and occupy himself with supplication and the remembrance of Allah Almighty. When the pilgrim reaches Allah’s House (the Ka’bah), he should enter it with his right foot first, saying:

\[
	ext{بِسْمِ اللَّهِ}
\]

In the Name of Allah, and blessings and salutations on the Messenger of Allah. I seek refuge in Allah, the Supreme, with His Noble Face, and with His eternal authority from the accursed Sbattan. O Allah, open for me the gates of Your mercy.

One says this supplication just as he does when he enters any \( 	ext{Majid} \). Next, one occupies himself with the \( 	ext{Talbiyyah} \) until he reaches the Ka’bah.

4) When he reaches the Ka’bah, he stops the \( 	ext{Talbiyyah} \), and heads toward the Black Stone, facing it, touching it with his right hand, and kissing it if that is possible. Yet one should not harm others by crowding around the stone. When acknowledging and facing the Stone, he says, “\( 	ext{Bismillah, wa Allâhu Akbar} \) (In the Name of Allah, and Allâh is the Most Great),” or he may simply say, “\( 	ext{Allâhu Akbar} \) (Allâh is the Most Great).” If kissing the stone is difficult, one may touch it with his right hand or with a stick or something similar, and then kiss the object that touched the Stone. If even touching it with an object is difficult, he may gesture toward the stone, saying,
“Allābu Akbar (Allāh is the Most Great),” but one doesn't kiss the object that he gestures with. One of the conditions of the Tawf being correct is for one to be pure from major and minor impurities, because the Tawf is like the prayer, except that talking is allowed during the former.

5) One stands so that the Ka'bah is to his left, and then he makes seven circuits around it. When one is parallel to the Yamani corner, one touches it with his right hand if he can, saying, “Bismillāh wa Allābu Akbar (In the Name of Allāh, and Allāh is the Most Great).” However, he should not kiss it. If it is difficult to touch it, he should leave it and continue in his Tawf, in which case he should neither gesture nor make Takbir (saying, “Allābu Akbar”): Allāh is the Most Great), because neither of the two are related from the Prophet ﷺ. As for the Black Stone, every time one passes it in his Tawf, he should touch it, kiss it, and make Takbir – as we have mentioned – or otherwise gesture toward it and make Takbir. It is recommended to take very quick short steps in the first three circuits for Tawf-Qudum (the Tawf of arrival), and this is specific to men, if they are able to do so. During Tawf-Qudum, it is also recommended for a man to place the middle of his Rida’ (upper garment) under his right armpit, with the two sides on his left shoulder. During all circuits, one should remember Allāh Almighty and invoke Him as much as possible, yet there is not any specific supplication or invocation for Tawf, rather, one may choose the supplications and invocations he makes. Between the Yamani corner and the Black Stone, during each circuit, one should recite:

Our Lord! Give us in this world that which is good and in the Hereafter that which is good, and save us from the torment of the Fire!1

This practice is established in the Sunnah of the Prophet ﷺ, one should complete the seventh circuit by touching the Black Stone – and kissing it if possible – or by gesturing to it, while making Takbir – based on the principles mentioned earlier. After finishing the
circuits, he may wear his *Rida*, placing it on his shoulders, with the two sides on his chest.

6) Next, the pilgrim prays two units behind the *Maqam*, if he is able to do so; if not, then he may pray them anywhere in the *Masjid*. After reciting *Al-Fatihah*, he should recite *Surat Al-Kafirun* in the first unit and *Al-Ikblas* in the second one. That is best, yet it is allowed for one to recite other chapters of the Qur’an. After praying these two units, one heads toward the Black Stone again, touching it with his right hand if possible.

7) Next, one goes to As-Safa, climbing it or standing at its bottom, though climbing is better if one can do so. Here, one will be pacing between As-Safa and Al-Marwah. Before embarking upon the first phase, one recites:

```
(158) إِنَّ الْيَتِمَّةَ وَالْمُرْمَرُ مِنْ عَمَلِ اللّهِ

Verily! As-Safa and Al-Marwah are of the Symbols of Allah.\[1\]

It is recommended to face the *Qiblah* when standing at As-Safa, praising Allah and declaring His greatness, saying:

```
لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللّهُ، وَاللّهُ أُكْبَرُ، لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللّهُ وَحْدَهُ لَا شَريْكَ لَهُ، لَهُ
الْمَلَآئَةُ وَلَهُ الحَمْدُ وَهُوَ عَلَى كُلِّ شَيْءٍ قَدِيرُ. لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللّهُ وَحْدَهُ،
أنْجِرُ وَغَدِهُ وَنصُرُ عَنْهُ وَهُوَ الْأَكْرَمُ الْخَيْرَاتُ وَحْدَهُ
```

None has the right to be worshipped but Allah, and Allah is the Most Great. None has the right to be worshipped except Allah, alone, without partner. To Him belong all sovereignty and praise and He has power over all things. None has the right to be worshipped except Allah alone. He fulfilled His promise, aided His servant, and He Alone defeated the allies.

Then one supplicates according to what is easy, raising one’s hands. One repeats the above-mentioned invocation along with the additional supplication three times. Then one walks toward Al-Marwah; on the way to Al-Marwah, there are two green lights; starting from the first light, a man should walk very fast until he

reaches the second one. Because a woman has much more of her body to cover and is to be protected from being seen, it is not legislated for her to walk this distance at a fast pace. When one reaches Al-Marwah, one may stand by it or climb it, though climbing it is better if one can do so. One should say and do at Al-Marwah just as one said and did at As-Safa, except for the recitation of the verse, for that is legislated when one climbs As-Safa for the first phase only, because that is the practice of the Prophet ﷺ. Then one descends, returning to As-Safa, walking most of the way, but walking fast between the two signs (green lights). In this fashion, one makes seven phases; going one way to Al-Marwa is considered to be one phase and returning to As-Safa is considered to be one phase. If one performs this pacing, riding a means of conveyance, there is no harm, especially when there is a need. During these phases it is recommended to remember Allâh Almighty and supplicate to Him as much as possible. Though one’s pacing is correct if one is not in a complete state of purity, it is recommended that one should be purified from both the minor and major states of impurity.

8) After completing these phases, a man shaves his head or shortens the length of his hair; though both are permissible, shaving is better. Yet if one’s entry into Makkah is close to the time of Hazâj, then merely shortening the length of one’s hair is better – in this instance only, so that he can shave the rest of his head during Hazâj. As for a woman, her hair is gathered, and the length of a fingertip – or less – is taken from her hair. If the Muhrim (one who is in Ibram) does all of the above, his ‘Umrah is now complete – and all praise is for Allâh: All that was forbidden upon him specifically because of the Ibram now becomes permissible.

(Second, The Hazâj)

The Manners Of Hazâj And Its Sunnah Actions[1]

Hazâj is one of the greatest forms of worship, for combined within it are many different kinds of worship that are not found together in anywhere else. It is a worship of body, wealth, and movement.

Therefore, the pilgrim should have a sense of the greatness of this worship, seeking to spend the most purely derived wealth he has on it, for indeed Allāh Almighty is pure and good, and only accepts that which is pure and good. Similarly, the pilgrim should make sure to abstain from any saying, deed, or intention that might nullify his Ḥajj or decrease from his rewards. His intention – for both Ḥajj and ‘Umrah – should be obedience to Allāh Almighty, by following His Orders, and that is achieved by sincerely intending all of one’s worship for Allāh. One supplicates only to Allāh, calls out to Him only, seeks help or a cure from Him only, and seeks for a lost one to be returned from Him only. One seeks help from Him and no other, and one relies upon Him and no other. If one seeks any of the above from other than Allāh, then he has indeed intended and directed his worship to other than Allāh; and whoever intends his worship for other than Allāh is a Mushrik (polytheist, one who associates partners with Allāh in worship). And whoever associates partners with Allāh in worship, then his deeds are rendered void, and in the Hereafter he is one of the losers – regardless of whether he knew what he was doing was unlawful or not.

A pilgrim should learn those matters that will benefit him, matters that will help to make his Ḥajj accepted. At the same time, he should avoid all forbidden deeds, especially those that stain his belief in Taubah, such as swearing by other than Allāh – by another person’s life, by the Prophet ﷺ, by the Ka’bah, and so on. All of that is forbidden whether the pilgrim knows it or not. There is no excuse for the pilgrim, for it is a matter that he must learn and know. A Muslim is required to know his religion and to seek out that knowledge. The pilgrim must also avoid evil speech, harming others, or adding what Allāh and His Messenger ﷺ have not legislated to the religion. Examples of such innovations are praying in a graveyard, supplicating in front of the graves of the righteous, of the Companions, of the Prophet’s family; other innovations include seeking blessings from historical places, such as the cave at Hira’, the Thawr Mountain, and other similar places. These actions are the most likely of means that lead to a hateful end – that which is the unlawful. The means hold the same rulings as the ends. These deeds were not practiced during the lifetime of the best of people and those among them who strove most in worship – the time of the
Companions, may Allâh be pleased with them, and the early generations.

All that has been legislated for us in Islam is enough and sufficient. Therefore, especially when we are in the sacred area of Makkah, we should renew our covenant with our Lord, asking for help, guidance, and success from Him.

The Obligation to Repent And Its Conditions

When one of us intends to travel for Hajj:

1) It is compulsory upon him to repent sincerely from all sins, especially those sins that negate Tawhid. In any case, repentance is always required from us at all times, but when one intends to perform any form of worship, the necessity to repent takes on a stronger emphasis. Here are the conditions of a sincere repentance:

2) That one completely desists from the sin he was perpetrating.
3) That one sincerely feels remorse for having perpetrated that sin.
4) That one resolves to never return to that sin in the future.
5) And if the sin involves the right of another person – in terms of wealth, a life, or wealth – that one returns that right to its proper owner or at least seeks absolution from him before traveling.

The Deeds Of Hajj

The Ihram

The pilgrim arrives at the Miqat, where he will make his intention.

If he is coming from Al-Madinah and what is before it, his Miqat will be a place known as Thul-Hulaifah. Today, this Miqat is known as Ahyar ‘Ali (the Wells of ‘Ali).

If he is coming from Ash-Sham (the areas of Syria, Lebanon, and so on) or its surrounding areas, then his Miqat is Al-Juhfah. Al-Juhfah is a village that is next to Rabigh.

If he is coming from Najd, then his Miqat is Qarn Al-Manazil.

If he is coming from the direction of Yemen, his Miqat is Yalamlam.

And if he is coming from Iraq or its surrounding areas, his Miqat is
That-'Irq,

When one passes by one of these Miqats – whether he is traveling by land, sea, or air – with the intention of Hajj or ‘Umrah, he must begin Ihram at the Miqat or from a place that is parallel to it. If one puts on the clothing of Ihram in preparation before actually reaching the Miqat, then in that there is no harm, because he then makes the actual intention of Hajj or ‘Umrah at the Miqat.

If the pilgrim lives within the boundaries of the Miqat, such as one who lives in Jeddah or Shara’a, it is not legislated for him to go back to the Miqat that is near him; rather, the place where he lives is his Miqat, and he makes Ihram from there.

Ihram For The Male Pilgrim

The pilgrim, in general, does the following when he reaches the Miqat:

1) He removes any stitched clothing.
2) It is recommended for him to take a complete Ghusl.
3) And to apply perfume.
4) It is also recommended for him to trim his moustache and, as he normally does, to remove his pubic hair, so that he doesn’t have to do so after entering into the state of Ihram.
5) As mentioned earlier, the male wears an Izar (lower wrap) and a Rida’ (upper wrap).
6) It is recommended for the two cloths to be white and clean.
7) It is also recommended for one to wear sandals when entering into the state of Ihram, for this practice is related from the Prophet ﷺ. For one who does not find sandals, he wears Khtjfs.

The Ihram Of The Woman And What She Must Do

If the pilgrim is a woman, she does the following:

1) It is recommended for her to perform Ghusl for Ihram, even though she may be menstruating or experiencing postnatal bleeding; she does everything a pilgrim does except for Tawaf around the Ka'bah, which she must perform after purifying herself from menstruation or post-natal bleeding.
2) There is no specific kind of garment that is recommended for her.
3) It is permitted for her to use any garment for Ihram, be it black, green, or any other color.
4) She must not, however, imitate men in the way she dresses.
5) Her clothing should cover her properly.
6) She must not display her ‘Awrab or her beauty to strangers.

* After the above events occur, both the male and female pilgrims make intention to enter upon the rites one wishes to perform – either Haaj or ‘Umrah or both combined.

* At this point, it is legislated for the pilgrim to begin Tahlbiyyah, saying – “Labbaik Bi ‘Umrah: O Allah, I am here (answering Your call),” if one is intending to make ‘Umrah; or: “Labbaik Bi Haaj: O Allah, I am here (answering Your call),” if one intends to make Haaj. and “Labbaik ‘Umranat wa-Haaj: O Allah, I am here (answering Your call),” if one intends to perform both. Next, one continues to recite the Tahlbiyyah (which we mentioned in its entirety above).

**What Does One in Ihram Do When Reaching Makkah?**

Upon reaching Makkah, the pilgrim should:
1) Stop uttering the Tahlbiyyah, and commence by making seven circuits around the Ka'bah.
2) Pray two units behind the Maqam.
3) Go out to As-Safa and pace seven times between As-Safa and Al-Marwah.
4) Then shave his head or shorten the length of his hair, at which point his ‘Umrah is complete and all things are permissible to him that were previously forbidden specifically due to the Ihram.

All of this has been explained in the discussion on ‘Umrah.

If one enters the Miqat during the months of Haaj, one must choose to adhere to one of the three rites (‘Umrah alone, Haaj alone, or both combined), and make Ihram accordingly.

1) The three rites just referred to are Haaj by itself, ‘Umrah by itself, or both combined.
2) Whoever makes Ihram for Haaj alone or for Haaj combined with ‘Umrah and he doesn’t have the sacrifice, then he shouldn’t stay
in his *Ihram*; rather, the Sunnah in his case is to make his *Ihram* for *Umrah*.

3) This means that he should make circuits around the Ka'bah and then pacing between As-Safa and Al-Marwah, after which he shortens the length of his hair and exits the state of *Ihram*.

4) However, if because one arrived late, he fears that he will miss *Hajj*, he may remain in *Ihram*.

5) The diligent believer who desires his actions to be correct should stick to what has been mentioned, performing as much worship that is legislated as possible, such as reciting the Qur'ân and praying in congregation.

6) Afterwards, one should not occupy his time in matters that are of no benefit to him, matters that are not legislated for him.

7) Examples of such matters are searching out for the graves of specific Companions, of the Prophet’s wives, of the place where the Prophet was born, of the place where revelation came down to him; people think that such places are places specifically meant for worship, that their supplications will be answered if they invoke Allâh in those places, and that such places will bring them blessings, when in reality, none of the above is true.
This Is How The Messenger Of Allâh ﷺ Performed ᴨ صلى الله عليه وسلم

To my Muslim brothers who are performing ᴨ صلى الله عليه وسلم to Allâh’s Sacred House,

I ask Allâh Almighty to guide us all, to guide us to that which pleases Him and to that which keeps us safe from deviations and trials. I also ask Him to make you all successful in performing your rites, meaning that you perform them in a way that pleases Him. I pray to Allâh that He accepts this worship from you and that He returns you to your lands, safe and guided. Indeed He is the best of those who are asked.

O Muslims:

1) My advice to all is to fear Allâh in all situations and to be upright upon His religion, while staying away from those matters that bring about His anger.

2) The greatest duty upon you is to uphold Ta’wîd of Allâh and to have sincerity to Allâh in all forms of worship. At the same time, you must be steadfast in following the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ, both in sayings and in deeds.

3) Perform the rites of ᴨ صلى الله عليه وسلم and all other forms of worship in the way that Allâh has legislated for His worshippers, legislated upon the tongue of His Messenger, His Khalîl, His choice from His creation: our Prophet, Imam, and Leader, Muhammad bin ‘Abdullâh ﷺ.

4) The greatest evil and crime known to man is associating partners with Allâh, directing an act of worship or part of an act of worship to other than Allâh, for He Almighty says:

 وإنما أُرِيكَ يَدٌ وَمَلْعُونَ مَا دُونَ ذَلِكَ لِنَشْتَهْ وَمَن يَشَرَكِ يَأْتُوهُ

Verily, Allâh forgives not that partners should be set up with

[1] Hakathâ ᴨ صلى الله عليه وسلم written by Shaikh ‘Abdul-'Aziz bin Baz, the previous Mufti of the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia – may Allâh have mercy upon him.
him in worship, but He forgives except that (anything else) to whom He wills, and whoever sets up partners with Alläh in worship, he has indeed invented a tremendous sin.\cite{1}

Addressing His Prophet, Muhammad \\(^{35}\), Alläh Almighty said:

وَلَعَظَّ أُحِي إِلَّا إِلَّا أَنْتُمْ مِنْ نَقُولَةَ لَوْنَ أَنْمِثَ لَيُحَظَّنِّي عَلَّالَةَ وَلَكُمُّمُنْ أَنْمِثَيَتِي

And indeed it has been revealed to you (O Muhammad \\(^{35}\)), as it was to those (Alläh’s Messengers) before you: “If you join others in worship with Alläh, (then) surely (all) your deeds will be in vain, and you will certainly be among the losers.”\cite{2}

**Those Who Are Performing \textit{Hajj} To Alläh’s Sacred House**

5) Indeed, our Prophet \\(^{35}\) performed one \textit{Hajj} only after his migration to Al-Madinah, and that was at the end of his life; it is known as the Farewell Pilgrimage.

6) In that \textit{Hajj}, the Prophet \\(^{35}\) taught people their rites, with his speech and action, and he \\(^{35}\) said to them:

«خذوا غزّي مناسككم»

Take from me your rites.

**It Is Compulsory To Follow The Prophet \\(^{35}\)**

7) It is incumbent upon Muslims to follow the Prophet \\(^{35}\) in their rites.

8) They must perform the rites in the manner that has been legislated for them, because the Prophet \\(^{35}\) is our teacher and guide; indeed, Alläh Almighty sent him as a mercy to mankind and jinn, and as a proof upon all worshippers, which is why Alläh ordered His creatures to obey him. Alläh informed us that obeying him is a means of entering Paradise and being saved from the Fire. It is also a proof, indicating the worshipper’s sincere love for his Lord, and also indicating Alläh’s love for His worshippers, as Alläh Almighty says:

\begin{verse}
ومَا نَطْنَكُمْ الرَّسُولُ فَخُذُوهُ وَمَا نَهْنُكُمْ عَنْهُ فَانْهْوَاهُ
\end{verse}

\cite{1}(An-Nisa’ 4:48)\cite{2}(Az-Zumar 39:65)
And whatsoever the Messenger (Muhammad ﷺ) gives you, take it, and whatsoever he forbids you, abstain (from it).[^1]

And:

وَأَيْمَآ اَلْصَّلَاةِ وَأَيْمَآ الْزَّكَاةِ وَأَيْمَآ الْإِلْهَآمِ لَيْدَآ عِنْدَمَهُمُ الرَّحْمَؤُنَّ

And perform As-Salat, and give Zakat and obey the Messenger (Muhammad ﷺ) that you may receive mercy (from Allāh).[^2]

He who obeys the Messenger (Muhammad ﷺ), has indeed obeyed Allāh.[^3]

And:

فَلَا خَيْرٌ كَذَا قَدْ ذَكَرَهُ الْمُسْلِمُ في رَسُولِ اللَّهِ وَأَشْمَاءً حَسَنَةً لَّمْ يَكُنْ كَذَا أَحْسَنْ وَلَا يَجْمَعَ الْأَحْجَرَ

Indeed in the Messenger of Allāh (Muhammad ﷺ) you have a good example to follow for him who hopes in (the Meeting with) Allāh and the Last Day and remembers Allāh much.[^4]

And:

وَأَنَّ الْيَدَّيْلَةَ بَيْنَ الْجَهَّامَةِ يَكْتُبُهَا اللهُ وَلَّيُنَبِّئَهَا وَلَا يَنْبِئَهَا الْمُتَفَسِّرُونَ لَمَّا بَيْنَ الْجَهَّامَةِ وَالْجَهَّامَةَ اللَّهُ مَّلْكُهُ وَلَا يَجْمَعُ الْجَهَّامَةَ الْأَقْحَرَ

And whosoever obeys Allāh and His Messenger (Muhammad ﷺ) will be admitted to Gardens under which rivers flow (in Paradise), to abide therein, and that will be the great success. And whosoever disobeys Allāh and His Messenger (Muhammad ﷺ), and transgresses His (set) limits, He will cast him into the Fire, to abide therein; and he shall have a disgraceful

[^1]: (Al-Hasbr 59:7)
[^2]: (Al-Nur 24:56)
[^3]: (Al-Nisa’ 4:80)
[^4]: (Al-Abzab 33:21)
torment.\[1\]

And:

Say (O Muhammad ﷺ): “O mankind! Verily, I am sent to you all as the Messenger of Allāh – to Whom belongs the dominion of the heavens and the earth. Laa Ilāha Illa Huwa (none has the right to be worshipped but He); It is He Who gives life and causes death. So believe in Allāh and His Messenger (Muhammad ﷺ), the Prophet who can neither read nor write (i.e., Muhammad ﷺ who believes in Allāh and His Words [this Qur’ān], the Tawrah and the Injil and also Allāh’s Word: “Be!” – and he was, i.e. ‘Iesu son of Maryam], and follow him so that you may be guided.”[2]

And:

Say (O Muhammad ﷺ to mankind): “If you (really) love Allāh then follow me, Allāh will love you and forgive you of your sins. And Allāh is Oft-Forgiving, Most Merciful.”[3]

And there are many other verses as well that carry a similar meaning.

9) My advice then to you all, as well as to myself, is to fear Allāh in all circumstances and to be sincere in following the Prophet ﷺ, following his sayings and actions, so that you may achieve happiness and safety, both in this world and in the Hereafter.

What The Pilgrim Should Do On The Eighth Day Of Thul-Hijjah

Brother pilgrims to Allāh’s Sacred House, on the eight of Thul-Hijjah, our Prophet, Muhammad ﷺ,

\[1\] (An-Nisā’ 4:13,14)
\[2\] (Al-A’raf 7:158)
\[3\] (Aal ‘Imran 3:31)
10) Set out from Makkah to Mina, uttering the *Talbiyyah*.

11) Ordered his companions, may Allāh be pleased with them, to begin the *Talbiyyah* for *H吉* from where they were staying and head out for Mina.

12) Didn’t order his Companions to perform the Farewell *Tawaf* before going to Mina. This shows that the Sunnah for all pilgrims – those living in Makkah, those who have finished their ‘Umrah, and all other pilgrims – is to head to Mina on the eight day, making *Talbiyyah* for *H吉*. They do not have to first go the Ka’bah for a Farewell *Tawaf*.

**What It Is Recommended For The Pilgrim To Do When Entering Into Ihram**

13) When the pilgrim is entering into the state of *Ihram* – meaning the time he makes *Ihram* for *H吉*, because after he performed ‘Umrah, he exited from the state of *Ihram*, waiting for the *H吉* – he should take a shower, apply perfume, and clean himself, just as he did at the *Miqat*. That is what the Prophet ﷺ ordered ‘Aishah, may Allāh be pleased with her, to do; originally, she made *Ihram* for ‘Umrah, but she began to menstruate when she entered Makkah, making it impossible for her to perform *Tawaf* before heading out to Mina, so the Prophet ﷺ ordered her to perform *Ghusl* and to begin *Ihram* for *H吉*. That is what she did, so she was one of those who performed the Qiran form of *H吉* and ‘Umrah.

14) While in Mina, the Prophet ﷺ and his Companions shortened their four-unit prayers to two units, without combining between any of the prayers, so that is the Sunnah of the Prophet ﷺ in this regard.

15) During this trip, it is Sunnah for the pilgrim to occupy his time by saying the *Talbiyyah*, by remembering Allāh, by reciting the Qur’ān, and by doing other acts of obedience to Allāh, such as calling others to the way of Allāh, ordering others to do good, forbidding others from perpetrating evil, and helping the poor.

**What The Muslim Should Do On The Day Of ‘Arafah**

16) When the sun had risen on the day of ‘Arafah, the Prophet ﷺ and his Companions headed toward ‘Arafat – some were uttering the *Talbiyyah* while others were uttering the *Takbir*. 
17) When he reached 'Arafat, he halted at Nimarah in western 'Arafat where a camel-hair tent was erected for him, under which he was shaded. This proves that it is permissible for pilgrims to take shade in tents, under trees, and so on.

18) At midday, the Prophet climbed his mount and gave a sermon to the people, reminding them and teaching them the rites of their Ḥaḍr. He warned them not to deal in usury and not to perform deeds of ignorance. Their blood, wealth, and honor — he informed them that all of these are inviolable, and he ordered them to hold fast to Allāh’s Book and to His Messenger’s Sunnah. He then told them that they wouldn’t go astray so long as they adhered to Allāh’s Book and His Messenger’s Sunnah.

19) It is incumbent upon all Muslims, no matter where they may be, to cling to this advice and to apply it.

20) All Muslim rulers must adhere to Allāh’s Book and His Prophet’s Sunnah; they must apply the rulings found in those two sources in all of their affairs, forcing their citizens to apply them as well. This is the way to honor, happiness, and safety in this world and in the Hereafter — may Allāh grant success to us all.

21) Then the Prophet shortened the Zuhr and 'Asr prayers, combining between them in the time of Zuhr, with one Athān and two Iqamāt.

22) Then the Prophet, while on his mount, moved a little further, faced the Qiblah, then remembered Allāh and supplicated to Him with his hands raised, until the sun had set. Because he wasn’t fasting on that day, we learn that it is legislated for all pilgrims to do as he did at 'Arafat, in terms of not fasting, and in terms of remembering Allāh, supplicating — with their hands raised, and uttering the Talbiyyah until the sun sets. In an authentic Hadith, the Prophet said:

ما من يوم أكثر عفصة من هذا يوم عرفته وإنما سبحة الله لكباركم
فيا جنيهم ملائكته

There is no day wherein more people are liberated from the Fire than on the day of 'Arafat. Indeed, He (Allāh) comes close and boasts about them to His angels.
It has also been related from the Prophet ﷺ that Allâh says to His angels on the day of ‘Arafah:

"أَنْظُرُواٌ إِلَى عِبَادِي! أَتُوبُونِ شَعَانِ عُبْرَىٰ بَرْجَونِ رَحْمَتِي أَتَهْدِمُونَ آنِي قُدْ عُفِّرْتُ لَهُمْ!

Look at My worshippers! They have come to Me, disheveled and dust-covered, hoping for my mercy. I make you bear witness that I indeed forgive them.

In another authentic Hadith, the Prophet ﷺ said:

"وَقَفْتُمُ حَتَّى آتِيْتُمُوْرَفَةً، وَعَفِّرْتُمُوْرَفَةً مَوْقِفَتَ "

I have stood here, yet all of Arafat is a place for standing.

What A Pilgrim Does In Muzdalifah

23) The Prophet ﷺ prayed combined Maghrib and ‘Isha’, praying three units for the former and two for the latter – and making the prayers with one Atbah and two Iqamahs.[1]

24) Then he ﷺ spent the night in Mina, praying Fajr and the Sunnah of Fajr, with the Atbah and the Iqamah.

25) Then the Prophet ﷺ went to the Al-Mash’ar, he remembered Allâh there and uttered the Takbir and Laa Ilaaha Illallah, supplicated with his hands raised and said:

"وَقَفْتُمُ حَتَّى آتِيْتُمُوْرَفَةً، وَعَفِّرْتُمُوْرَفَةً مَوْقِفَتَ "

I have stood here, yet all of it is a place for standing:

This shows that Muzdalifah in its entirety is a stopping place for pilgrims – each pilgrim spends the night in his place, remembering Allâh Almighty and asking His forgiveness, without the need of going to the spot where the Prophet ﷺ stood.

[1] Some people occupy themselves on the night of Muzdalifah by gathering pebbles for the stoning, mistakenly thinking that the pebbles may be taken from Muzdalifah only. So rather than spending their time in prayer, they gather pebbles. This is a mistake, and the Sunnah is to pick up seven pebbles for the Jamratul-Aqabah on the day of ‘Nahr, following the Sunnah of the Prophet ﷺ. So one gathers the stones while going to Mina, after having prayed Fajr.
26) The Prophet ﷺ allowed the weak to go to Mina during the night of Muzdalifah.

27) This means that the weak – including women, the sick, the old, and those like them – can leave Muzdalifah to go to Mina in the last half of the night, using the license they have, fearing the hardship of crowds.

28) It is also permissible for those who are weak to Stone the Jamarat (pebbles), as is established from Umm Salamah and Asma’ bint Abu Bakr, may Allāh be pleased with them.

29) Asma’ bint Abu Bakr, may Allāh be pleased with her, related that the Prophet ﷺ permitted women to throw the pebbles at night.

30) When the sun began to really shine, the Prophet ﷺ headed to Mina, uttering the Talbiyyah.

What The Pilgrim Does On The Day Of Nahr

31) After the sun had risen, the Prophet ﷺ went to Jamaratul-Aqabab and stoned it with seven pebbles, uttering the Takbir (i.e., saying, “Allāhu Akbar”) with the throwing of each pebble.

32) Then the Prophet ﷺ slaughtered the sacrifice.

33) Then he ﷺ shaved his head.

34) Next, ‘Aishah, may Allāh be pleased with her, applied perfume on him.

35) Then he ﷺ went to Ka’bah and performed Tawaf.

The Ruling For Changing The Order Of The Rites

36) On the Day of Nahr, the Prophet ﷺ was asked about one who slaughtered the sacrifice before throwing the stones, or who shaved before slaughtering, or who went to the Ka’bah before stoning, and he ﷺ said:

الْحَرْجُ ﷺ

There is no harm.

The narrator of this Hadith said, “On that day, in all of the matters regarding putting before or putting after that the Prophet ﷺ was asked about, he said, ‘Do so, there is no harm.’” A man asked the Prophet ﷺ, ‘I made Sa’y (pacing between As-Safa and Al-Marwah)
before making Tawaf, and the Prophet ﷺ said:

\[ אַל הָרָּג \]

‘There is no harm.’"

37) From the above, we learn that the Sunnah for pilgrims is to begin by stoning on the day of ‘Eid, following that by slaughtering – if they have a sacrifice, then shaving their head or shortening the length of their hair – though shaving is better, for the Prophet ﷺ supplicated for forgiveness and mercy three times for those who shave, and only once for those who shorten the length of their hair.

38) At this point, the pilgrim is released from the ihram for the first of two times,

39) Which means that he may now wear stitched clothing and apply perfume.

40) It also means that he may do all that was forbidden upon him by ihram, except for sexual intercourse and the things that lead to it.

41) Then he goes to the Ka’bah, performing Tawaf on the day of ‘Eid or the day after ‘Eid.

42) If he is making the Tamattu’ form of Hajj, he then makes seven phases between As-Safa and Al-Marwah; after he completes these phases, he completely exits from the state of ihram, which means that he may also engage in lawful sexual intercourse.

43) As for one who is making Hajj by itself or one performing the Qiran form of Hajj, then the first Sa’y he made with the Tawaf of arrival is enough for him.

44) However, if he wasn’t able to make Sa’y with the Tawaf of arrival, he must make it with Tawaf-ul-fadhab (i.e., the Tawaf for returning).

The Deeds Of The Pilgrim After The Day Of Nabir

45) He then returns to Mina, staying there for the rest of the day of ‘Eid, along with the 11th, 12th, and 13th.

46) On each of the days of Tasbiq – the 11th, 12th, and 13th – he stones the Jamarat after midday, throwing seven pebbles at each Jamrah, and uttering the Takbir with each stone he throws. He
should supplicate, raising his hands after finishing the first and second Jamrat, placing the first one on his left when supplicating after throwing the pebbles there, and placing the second one on his right when supplicating after throwing pebbles there, and without standing to supplicate at the third Jamrah.

47) On the 13th day, after having stoned the Jamarat, the Prophet ﷺ stayed in Aḥṭah, praying Zuḥr, ‘Asr, Maghrīb, and ‘Īṣā’ there.

**The Farewell Tawf**

48) At the end of that night, one goes and stays in Makkah. On the day of the 14th, the Prophet ﷺ led the people in Fajr prayer.

49) He ﷺ performed the Farewell Tawf before Fajr prayer.

50) After the Fajr prayer, the Prophet ﷺ set out toward Al-Madinah – O Allāh, send prayers and salutations upon him.

51) From the above, we learn what it is Sunnah for the pilgrim to do during the days of Mina.

52) On each of the three days, he stones all three Jamarat after midday. At each Jamrah, he throws seven pebbles, uttering the Takbir with each throwing.

53) After stoning the first Jamrah, it is legislated for the pilgrim to raise his hands, face the Qiblah, and invoke Allāh, placing the Jamrah to his left.

54) He does the same at the second Jamrah after stoning it, except that he places the Jamrah to his right.

55) Supplicating thus is recommended, and not compulsory.

56) He should not stand and supplicate after the third Jamrah; if it is not possible for one to throw the stones after midday and before the setting of the sun, he may throw them in the night until the last part of the night, to make up for that day. This is the correct view from the different scholars in this issue, and it is a ruling in which one appreciates Allāh’s mercy for His worshippers.

57) If one wishes to go early, leaving on the 12th day after throwing the pebbles, then there is no harm in that.

58) But it is better to stay for the stoning of the 13th day, for that is in accordance to the practice of the Prophet ﷺ.
59) It is Sunnah for the pilgrim to spend the night in Mina on the nights before the 11th and 12th.

60) Spending these two nights in Mina is considered to be obligatory by many scholars.

61) To be considered to have spent the night in Mina, one should have spent at least most of the night there – if that is possible.

62) Whoever has a legitimate Islamic excuse – such as those with important responsibilities elsewhere – he does not have to spend the night in Mina.

63) For those who leave Mina early on the 12th – meaning they leave it before the sun has set – then they do not have to spend the night in Mina.

64) But as for those who are still in Mina after sunset, then they should spend the night in Mina and throw pebbles at the three Jamarat on the following day (the 13th), after midday, just as they threw pebbles at them on the 11th and 12th. After that, they may leave.

65) No one should throw pebbles after the 13th, even if they are still staying in Mina.

66) When the pilgrim is about to leave for his land, he must perform the Farewell Tawaf, for the Prophet ﷺ said,

«لا يَنْبُرُ أَحَدٌ مِّنَّكُمْ حَتَّى يَكُونَ أَخْيَرُ عَهْدِهِ بِآبَيْبٍ»

Let not one of you depart until it is his last duty at the House.

67) The exceptions are menstruating women and women experiencing postnatal bleeding, for they do not have to perform the Farewell Tawaf. It is confirmed that Ibn `Abbas, may Allah be pleased with them, said: “He ordered them to make it their last action in the House – except that he relieved the menstruating woman.”

68) Whoever delays the Tawaf ful-fadhab until he is about to travel, and then performs Tawaf, that one Tawaf is sufficient for the Farewell Tawaf as well – based on the two general proofs given above.
The Sacrifice And The Fidyab\(^1\)

If the pilgrim is performing the Tamattu' form of Hajj, or the Qiran form, and if he is not a resident of Makkah, he is responsible for the sacrifice of either a sheep, one-seventh of a camel, or one-seventh of a cow, from a pure and lawfully derived income, for Allâh Almighty is good and pure and He accepts only that which is good and pure. If someone from the said categories of pilgrims cannot make the above-mentioned sacrifice, then he must fast three days during Hajj, regardless of whether those days are before the day of Nahr or after it, during the days of Tashriq (the 11th, 12th, and 13th). Then he must fast seven extra days when he returns to his home; he has the option of fasting seven days in a row or one at a time, skipping days.

Visiting The Prophet's Masjid In Al-Madinah

Visiting the Prophet’s Masjid immediately before or after the Hajj is Sunnah, or even in other months, though there is no connection between visiting it and the Hajj. Visiting the Prophet’s Masjid is neither a pillar of Hajj nor is it one of its compulsory elements. Nevertheless, one prayer in that Masjid – at any time – is better than prayer in any other Masjid, except for the Sacred Masjid (in Makkah). This fact is established in an authentic Hadith related by Al-Bukhari and Muslim.

How To Enter The Masjid of Allâh's Messenger ﷺ

Generally speaking, the manners one must adhere to in the Prophet’s Masjid are the same as those manners that one must adhere to in any Masjid established for prayer on the earth. It is recommended for one who enters the Masjid to enter with his right foot first, supplicating with the invocation for entering the Masjid, which is related from the Prophet ﷺ. Similarly, when one is leaving the Masjid, one should make the supplication for leaving a Masjid, which is also related from the Prophet ﷺ. However, there is no specific supplication that pertains to the Prophet’s Masjid. Next, the visitor prays two units in any part of the Masjid, two units that are called Tabiyyatul-Masjid (Greeting the Masjid). If one prays them in the honored Rawdhab (an area in the front of the Prophet’s Masjid),

\(^1\) From Aadabul-Hajj wal-'Umrah was-Ziyarah As-Shari'ah by Shaikh ‘Abdul-'Aziz bin 'Abdullah bin Hasan Aal Ash-Shaikh.
then that is better.

**Visiting The Grave Of The Messenger Of Allâh ﷺ**

Because the visiting Muslim is in near proximity to the Prophet’s grave, it is good for him to visit it, along with the graves of his two Companions, Abu Bakr and ‘Umar, may Allâh be pleased with them (both of which are adjacent to the Prophet’s grave). One should visit it in a respectful manner, in a manner that conforms to the Shari’ah, showing good manners and lowering one’s voice, saying, “As-Salaamu Alatkum Yaa Rasoolallâh wa Rahmatullabi wa Barakaatubu (May the peace, mercy, and blessings of Allâh be upon you, O Messenger of Allâh).” To mention his noble qualities, to bear witness that he ﷺ fulfilled the duties of his mission, and to bear witness that the Prophet ﷺ performed Jibad in the way of Allâh in the truest sense – to do all of these is permissible. Next, one greets Abu Bakr and ‘Umar, may Allâh be pleased with them, supplicating for them and invoking Allâh to be pleased with them. What has just been described is the legislated visitation that is known from the Companions and those who came after them from our pious predecessors. After that, one should leave; but if one wishes to remain and supplicate, he should turn around, face the Qiblah, and then invoke Allâh with those invocations that he wishes to make.

**Visiting Graves Is Limited To Men Only**

Because of the general prohibition on women visiting graves, visiting the Prophet’s grave is legislated for men only. Indeed, the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ cursed women who visit graves. The pilgrim must consider this and beware of perpetrating any sin that may nullify his good deeds – sins that include wiping the enclosure (thinking that doing so will bring him benefit) or the bars surrounding it, or to make Tawâf around the enclosure as opposed to the Ka’bah, for all of these actions are forbidden. It is also strictly forbidden to ask the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ to fulfill one’s needs, to divert hardship, to cure the sick, to enrich the poor, or to intercede for him on the Day of Judgement. All of these matters are unlawful; none can answer such requests except Allâh, and to ask from other than Allâh regarding such matters is Shirk in worship.

وَإِنَّ اللَّهَ لَا يَغْفِرُ أَن يُشْرِكُواً وَيَكُونُ
Verily, Allāh forgives not that partners should be set up with him in worship.[[1]

However, you may invoke Allāh for the Prophet ﷺ – or righteous people – to intercede for you.

Whoever lives far from Al-Madinah, he should not make a journey to it for the purpose of visiting the Prophet’s grave; one’s intention (based on the Sunnah) should be to visit the Prophet’s Ṣa‘īd. Visiting his grave is secondary to visiting the Ṣa‘īd.

When one visits Al-Madinah, it is also recommended for him to visit the Quba Ṣa‘īd and to pray in it, for the Prophet ﷺ used to visit the Quba Ṣa‘īd, riding to reach there or walking, and then he would pray two units of prayer.

These are some of the manners of Ḥajj and visitation that we wished to mention, as well as those matters that a Muslim must beware of (from the traps of the Shaitan) when he is performing this great act of worship, an act of worship which contains many different forms of worship. And success lies with Allāh.

**General Points To Consider**

**First,** while making Ta‘wīf, one should supplicate, saying those invocations that he wishes to make, without limiting oneself to a book of supplication. If one finds it difficult to supplicate the entire time, one should recite the Qur’ān, remember Allāh, and glorify Him. One should make Ta‘wīf and Sa‘ī without a guide leading him.

**Second,** during the days of Ḥajj, one should supplicate as often as possible and perform many acts of obedience, while avoiding forbidden deeds. One should especially beware of missing prayer or staying behind from congregational prayer, or wasting one’s time in general or in listening to music.

**Third,** it is forbidden for the Muslim woman to beautify herself or to display her natural beauty in any way; it is also forbidden for her to crowd with men – so as not to be in physical contact with them – during the rites of Ḥajj and in the marketplace.

**Fourth,** many people make a grave mistake when they venerate a

---

[1] (An-Nīsa’ 4:48)
Shaikh of an order, by glorifying him and fearing him. This gravely affects and negates one’s belief in Tawhid – because such acts of worship are only for Allâh, for He alone knows what is hidden in souls. If one venerates a Shaikh to such a high level, then that is Shirk, no doubt. It is also forbidden to recite invocations as the Sufis do during Haj or on any other occasion, for the recitation of such invocations is an innovation – the introduction of a new matter in the religion. It is also forbidden to recite invocations that are not authentically related from the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ, that he didn’t teach to his Companions, or that were not uttered by the pious early generation of Muslims – worshipping Allâh by such invocations is not allowed.
A Benefit

As we discussed *Haj* and the sacrifice, it is appropriate here to discuss certain matters related to the *Udhhîyyah* (sacrifice) and the *Aqeeqah*.[1]

**Al-Udhhîyyah**

**Its Definition:** It is the sheep that is slaughtered on the morning of *'Eid* day, seeking closeness to Allâh thereby.

**Its Ruling:** It is Sunnah for the inhabitants of every Muslim household – if they are able – to perform the *Udhhîyyah*, for Allâh Almighty says:

```
فَضِيلِ رَيْكَ وَأَعُسِرَ
```

Therefore turn in prayer to your Lord and sacrifice (to Him only).[2] The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said:

```
مَنْ كَانَ ذَيَّحَ قَبْلَ الصَّلاةِ فَلَبَّيْعَ
```

Whoever slaughtered before the prayer, then let him repeat it.[3]

Abu Ayyub Al-Ansari said, “During the life of the Prophet ﷺ, a man used to sacrifice a lamb on his behalf and on behalf of the inhabitants of his house.”[4]

**Its Virtues:** To appreciate the great virtues of the *Udhhîyyah*, one should ponder this saying of the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ:

```
مَا عَمِلَ إِنَّ آدَمَ نَزَالًا عَمَّالًا أَحْبَبَ إِلَى اللَّهِ مِنْ إِرَاعَتِهِ، وَإِنَّهَا لَنَزَالَ يُومَ الْقَيَمَةِ يُفْرَضْنَ وَأَطْلِفَهَا وَأَشْعَارَهَا، وَإِنَّ الْدَّمَ لَيَتَعَّنُّ مِنْ اللَّهِ عَرْوً وَجَلَّ يَمِكَّنُنَّ قَبْلَ أَنْ يَتَعَّنَّ عَلَى الْأَرْضِ فَطَيْبِيَّةً يَبْعَا نَصْمًا.
```

On the day of *Nabîr*, no worshipper performed a deed more

---

[3] Agreed upon
[4] At-Tirmithi, who declared it to be authentic.
What Must Be Known About Islam

beloved than spilling blood (sacrifice of the sheep). Indeed, it (the sacrifice) will come on the Day of Judgement with its horns, hooves, and hair. Indeed the blood falls before Allah Almighty before it hits the ground. So let your selves be pleased with it.[1]

In another Hadith, the Companions asked, “What is this sacrifice?” He said:

“The Sunnah of your father, Ibrahim.”

They said, “And what do we get for it.” He said:

“For every hair a good deed.”

They said, “And what about its wool.” He said,

“For every hair of its wool a good deed.”[2]

The Wisdom Behind It Being Legislated: From the wisdom of Udhibiyah is the following:

1) One performs the Udhibiyah to achieve closeness to Allah, for He Almighty says:

Therefore turn in prayer to your Lord and sacrifice (to Him only).[3]

And:

Say (O Muhammad): “Verily, my Salat (prayer), my sacrifice, my living, and my dying are for Allah, the Lord of

[1] Ibn Majah and At-Tirmithi, who ruled it to be Hasan even though he declared it Gharib.
[2] Ibn Majah and At-Tirmithi; it is Hasan
[3] (Al-Kauthar 108:2)
the ‘Alamin (mankind, jinn and all that exists).’” He has no partner.[1]

The word Nusuk, which generally means rites of pilgrimage, is used in this verse, and it specifically refers to the sacrifice that one performs on the day of Nabir, seeking closeness to Allah.

2) By applying this Sunnah, one revives the Sunnah of the Imam of those who believe in Taubah, Ibrahim Al-Khalil, peace be upon him, Allah inspired him to slaughter his son, Isma’iil, peace be upon him. Then Allah Almighty ransomed him with a ram, and Ibrahim, peace be upon him, slaughtered the ram instead of Isma’iil. Allah Almighty says:

And We ransomed him with a great sacrifice (i.e., a ram).[2]

3) On the day of ‘Eid, one should especially be generous to one’s family, and one should spread mercy to the poor and needy.

4) Especially on the occasion of Udhbiyyah, all Muslims should be grateful to Allah for putting livestock at their disposal:

Then, when they are down on their sides (after slaughter), eat thereof, and feed the beggar who does not ask (men), and the beggar who asks (men). Thus have We made them subject to you that you may be grateful. It is neither their meat nor their blood that reaches Allah, but it is piety from you that reaches Him.[3]

The Rulings Of The Udhbiyyah

1) Its Age: The Udhbiyyah is not accepted if the sheep is less than a Jatha’ah – a sheep that has lived for six months and is entering into its seventh month. If one is slaughtering a goat, the slaughter is not correct unless it has lived for at least one complete year and is

[1] (Al-An’am 6:162,163)
entering into its second. If one is slaughtering a camel, it must have lived for at least four years and is entering into its fifth year. And if one is slaughtering a cow, it must have lived for at least two years and is entering into its third year. The Prophet ﷺ said:

إِنَّهُ لَا يُذِبحُ إلاَّ مَسْبِعًا، إِلَّاءَ أَنْ يُعْصَرُ عَلَى كُلِّ مَا فَتَذِبحُوا جَذَّعَةً مِنَ الْخَلْفِ وَالْمَسْبِعَةِ مِنَ الأَلْعَابِ مَنِ اللَّهِ ﷺ الْبَيْتَ.

Do not slaughter other than a Mustnābih, unless that is not possible for you, then slaughter a Jathi'ah sheep. And a Mustnābih among the cattle is the Taniyāh.¹

2) Its Health: The only animal that is accepted for the Udbiyyah is one that is free from all defects in its body structure. Therefore the one-eyed or lame animal is not acceptable; nor is one whose horns are broken from their roots or whose ear is cut from its base; nor is a sick animal accepted or the emaciated one who lacks marrow. This is because the Prophet ﷺ said:

أَرْحَمَ لَا تُجُورُ فِي الْأَضْحَاجِ: الْعُوْزِىَّةُ الْبَيْنِ غُرُرًا، وَالْمَرْيضُةُ -اَلْبَيْنِ مَرْسُومُهَا، وَالْعَرْجَةُ الْبَيْنِ ضَلْعُهَا، وَالْكَبْرَةُ الْبَيْنِ لَا تُنْبِي - يَغْيُبُ لَا يَنْتَيُ فِي هَا - أَيُّهُ لَا مَعْيٌ فِي عَظَاةِهَا وَهُوَ الْبِئَالُ الْعَجِينَةُ;

Four are not allowed in the Udbiyyah: the one that is clearly one-eyed, the one that is clearly sick, the one that is clearly limping, and the one that is very thin such that it does not have marrow in its bones.

3) The Best Udbiyyah: The best Udbiyyah is the horned, white, male ram, which is partly black around its eyes and in its legs, because this is the description that the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ chose and slaughtered. 'Aishah, may Allāh be pleased with her, said, “Indeed the Prophet ﷺ slaughtered a horned ram, one that would stamp with black (i.e., black hooves), walk with black (i.e., black legs), and see with black (i.e., around its eye is blackness).”²

4) The Time Of The Slaughter: The time to perform the Udbiyyah is the morning of 'Eid day, after the 'Eid Prayer. It is not considered

¹ Muslim.
² At-Tirmithi, who declared it to be authentic.
Udhibiyah if one slaughters before the prayer, for the Prophet ﷺ said:

“من دُنِىَ قَبْلَ الصَّلاةَ فَإِنما يَذْهَبُ لِنفْسِهِ، وَمِنْ دُنِىَ بَعْدَ الصَّلاةَ فَقَدْ

ثُمَّ شَكَّةُ، وأَصَابَ شَبَهَةَ المُسْلِمِينَ”

Whoever slaughters before the prayer, then he is indeed slaughtering for himself, and whoever slaughters after the prayer, then his sacrifice is complete and he has fulfilled the Sunnah of the Muslims.⁴¹

As for after ‘Eid day, one may delay the slaughter to the second or third day after ‘Eid, for it has been related that:

“كُلَّ أُيُوْمٍ مَّن يَذْهَبُ”

Every day of Tasbiq is (a day of) slaughter.⁴²

5) During The Slaughter: When slaughtering the sacrifice, it is recommended to make it face the Qiblah; then, one should say, “Indeed I have directed my face to the One Who has created the heavens and the earth Hanifan (As one who worships Allâh alone without associating any partner with Him in worship) and I am not of the polytheists. Indeed my prayer, my slaughter, my life, and my death are for Allâh, Lord of all that exists, and He has no partner. Upon that I have been commanded, and I am the first of the Muslims.” Upon performing the sacrifice, one should say, “Bismillâh (In the Name of Allâh).”⁴³

6) Assigning An Agent To Perform It On One’s Behalf: It is recommended for the Muslim to perform the Udhibiyah himself, but if he appoints another to do it for him, then that is permissible,

⁴¹ Al-Bukhari
⁴² Related by Ahmad, but the chain has been criticized; however, there are sayings of ‘Ali, Ibn ‘Abbas, and other Companions, may Allâh be pleased with them, that attest to the meaning of this Hadith, “Do not delay the Udhibiyah after the third day of Eid”; Malik and Abu Hanifah made this statement and it is also related from ‘Umar and his son, may Allâh be pleased with them.
⁴³ Based on this verse in the Qur’an, saying “Bismillâh” here is compulsory:

Eat not of that on which Allâh’s Name has not been pronounced. (Al-An’âm 6:121)
and regarding its permissibility there is no disagreement among the people of knowledge.

7) The Recommended Distribution Of The Slaughter: It is recommended to divide the Udhibiyyah into three parts: his family eats a third, he gives a third in charity, and he gives the last third as a gift to friends, for the Prophet ﷺ said,

«کُلُواْ وَأَجْرُواْ وَتَصْدِقُواْ»

Eat, preserve, and give in charity.

Giving all of the meat in charity is permissible. It is also permissible not to give any of it as a gift.

8) The Butcher's Payment For slaughtering The Udhibiyyah: The butcher receives no payment from the Udhibiyyah itself. ‘Ali said, “The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ ordered me to take care of the slaughter of his camel; and that I should give its meat, skin, and bones to charity; and that I should not give the butcher anything from it.” And he ﷺ said:

«نَهَيْنَا نَعِطَيْهِ مِنَ عَلَيْنَا»

We will give him from us (ourselves).[1]

9) Is Slaughtering A Sheep Sufficient For One's Entire Household?: Slaughtering a sheep is enough for an entire household even if that household consists of many members. Abu Ayyub, may Allâh be pleased with him, said, “During the life of the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ, a man used to perform Udhibiyyah with a sheep on his own behalf and on behalf of the members of his household.”[2]

10) What The One Who Intends To Perform The Udhibiyyah Should Avoid: When the month of Thul-Hijjah begins, it is extremely disliked for one who intends to perform Udhibiyyah to take anything from his hair or nails until after performing the Udhibiyyah, for the Prophet ﷺ said:

«إِذَا رَأَىَ مُهَارَبًا مُهَارَبَةً وَأَرَادَ أَحَدُكُمْ أَنْ يُضْحَى فَلَيْسَ كُلُّ عَنْ سَعْرِهِ وَأَطْفَأَرَهُ حَتَّى يُضْحَى»

[2] At-Tirmithi, who declared it to be authentic.
When you see the crescent for Thul-Hijah and you intend to perform the Udhabiyah, then abstain from (cutting) your hair and nails until you perform the Udhabiyah.\(^1\)

11) The Udhabiyah of the Messenger of Allah ﷺ On Behalf Of His Entire Nation: A Muslim who is unable to perform the Udhabiyah receives the reward of those who perform it, because when the Prophet ﷺ was slaughtering one of two rams, he ﷺ said:

\[ \text{اللَّهُمَّ هَدِينِي} \]

O Allah, this is from me and from those who did not perform the Udhabiyah from my nation.\(^2\)

The ‘Aqeeqah

1) Its Definition: The ‘Aqeeqah is the sheep that is slaughtered for the newborn seven days after he is born – or the 14th day or the 21st day; such is the Sunnah, and after that, the sheep can be slaughtered on any day.

2) Its Ruling: The ‘Aqeeqah is an emphasized Sunnah for anyone who is able to perform it from the guardians of the newborn. That is because the Prophet ﷺ said:

\[ \text{كُلُّ عَلَامٍ زَهِيدٍ يَعْقِبَيْهِ نَذِيِّحَ عَنْهُ بُيْوَمَ سَابِعَهُ} \]

Each young boy is hostage to his ‘Aqeeqah, which is slaughtered on his behalf on his seventh day, which is when he is named and his head is shaved.\(^3\)

3) Its Wisdom: One wisdom behind the ‘Aqeeqah is that people should show their gratitude to Allah for the blessing of a child; it is also a means through which one asks Allah to protect and take care of his child.

Some Of Its Rulings

1) The Health And Age Of The Sheep: In terms of age and being free from defects, the same applies to the ‘Aqeeqah as applies to the

\[^1\] Muslim
\[^2\] Ahmad, Abu Dawud, and At-Tirmithi
\[^3\] Abu Dawud and An-Nasa'i; more than one scholar from the people of knowledge has judged it to be authentic.
Must Be Known About Islam

Udhhiyyah: whatever isn’t sufficient for the Udhhiyyah, then, is insufficient for the ‘Aqeeqah.

2) Eating Its Meat And Feeding Others From It: It is recommended to divide the meat as one divides it for the Udhhiyyah: the household members eat from it, part of it is given in charity, and the rest is given as a gift to friends.

3) What Is Recommended To Do On The Day Of ‘Aqeeqah: For the male newborn, it is recommended to slaughter two sheep, “For the Messenger of Allâh slaughtered two rams on behalf of Al-Hasan.” It is also recommended to name the newborn on the seventh day, choosing one of the best for names. One should also shave the head of the baby, giving gold or silver equal to the weight of his hair in charity, or the amount of money that is equivalent. The Prophet said:

Each young boy is hostage to his ‘Aqeeqah, which is slaughtered on his behalf on his seventh day, which is when he is named and his head is shaved.

4) The Athan And The Iqamah In The Ears Of The Newborn: For when the newborn is delivered, the people of knowledge recommend that the Athan should be called in his right ear, while the Iqamah is performed in his left one, in the hope that he is protected from Unmus-Sibyan (the follower of jinn). The following has been related:

To whoever is born a child, he should make Athan in his child’s right ear and the Iqamah in his left one, and Unmus-Sibyan will not hurt him.

---

[2] It is recommended to shave the head of the male baby as opposed to the female one, for it is disliked to do so in her case.
[3] Ibn As-Sunni related it as a Hadith from the Prophet. The author of At-Talkhis related it and said nothing against it.
The Noble Qur’ân

The Qur’an: It is Allâh’s Speech and a miracle. It was revealed to Muhammad ﷺ, it is written in the Mus-hafs (books in which only the Qur’ân is written), it has been passed down through so many different sources that there is no doubt surrounding its authenticity, and its recitation is a form of worship.

The Qur’ân has been given a number of different names, each of which conveys a similar meaning:

1) Al-Furqan (The Criterion): In the sense that it is speech, it acts as the criterion, separating truth and falsehood - Allâh Almighty says:

```
Blessed be He Who sent down the Criterion (of right and wrong, i.e., this Qur’ân) to His slave that he may be a warner to the ‘Alamin (mankind and jinn).[1]
```

2) Al-Kitab (The Book): It is Allâh’s Speech, written between the two covers of the Mus-hafs; Allâh Almighty says:

```
Al-f-Lam-Mim. [These letters are one of the miracles of the Qur’ân and none but Allâh (Alone) knows their meanings]. This is the Book (the Qur’ân), whereof there is no doubt, a guidance to those who are Al-Muttaqun [the pious and righteous persons who fear Allâh much (abstain from all kinds of sins and evil deeds which He has forbidden) and love Allâh much (perform all kinds of good deeds which He has ordained)].[2]
```

3) Alb-Ihikr (The Remembrance): This name refers to its honor and exaltedness:

```
And this is a blessed Reminder (the Qur’ân) which We have
```

[1] (Al-Furqan 25:1)
[2] (Al-Baqarah 2:1,2)
sent down.\footnote{Al-Anbi'ya' 21:50}

4) At-Tanzil (The Revelation): i.e., Allâh Almighty revealed it, sections at a time, each section appropriate to the circumstances at the time of revelation. Allâh Almighty says:

\[\text{تُوْنَىٰ مِنُّ حَكْمِ حِمَيْلِيِّ} \]

Sent down by the All-Wise, Worthy of all praise (Allâh).\footnote{Fussilat 41:42}

There are also other names for the Qur'ân.

In the Qur'ân, Allâh has given us the basis for the knowledge of all matters. Rulings, laws, stories, parables, wisdom, admonitions, the ways that govern souls and the universe alike, man, life, and an all-embracing glimpse of the universe – all of these are contained in the Qur'ân. Allâh Almighty says:

\[\text{وَزَوَّرَنَا عَلَيْكَ الْكِتَابَ يَسِيرَ إِلَّاً مَّرْبُوضَ وَخَالِدَةً وَحَكِيمَةً} \]

And We have sent down to you the Book (the Qur'ân) as an exposition of every thing, a guidance, a mercy, and glad tidings for those who have submitted themselves (to Allâh as Muslims).\footnote{An-Nahl 16:89}

It is the Final Prophetic Book revealed to a Prophet, and it is the only revealed book that remains and will remain intact; it is the final divine message:

\[\text{وَأُرْسِلْنَا إِلِىٰ إِلَّهٖ وَحِينَ اسْتَجَابُوْا إِلَّهٖ مَّنْ نُزِّلَ إِلَيْهِمْ وَنَزْلَ إِلَيْهِمْ بِشَكْرٍ} \]

And We have also sent down unto you (O Muhammad ﷺ) the reminder and the advice (the Qur'ân), that you may explain clearly to men what is sent down to them, and that they may give thought.\footnote{An-Nahl 16:44}

There are a great many of verses and Hadiths that extol the virtues of reciting the Qur'ân and adhering to its precepts. In one such verse,
The Noble Qur'an

Allah Almighty says:

\[\text{إِنَّ الَّذِينَ يَقُولُونَ:َ كَتِبَ اللهُ وَقَامَواَ الصَّلَاةَ وَآتَيْنَاهُمْ مَا رُفِّقَنَّهُمْ بِسُرٍّ وَعَلَّمَهُمْ تَجْوِيعًا فَخُذُوهُ أنْ تَكْبُرُونَ}\]

Verily, those who recite the Book of Allah, and perform As-Salat, and spend out of what We have provided for them, secretly and openly, hope for a (sure) trade-gain that will never perish.\(^1\)

In a Hadith related by ‘Uthman bin ‘Affan, may Allah be pleased with him, the Messenger of Allah ﷺ said:

\[\text{ُبِنَهُمْ مِنْ تَعْلَمَ الْقُرْآنَ وَعَلَّمَهَا}\]

The best of you is he who learns the Qur’an and teaches it.\(^2\)

The Messenger of Allah ﷺ also said:

\[\text{مَنْ قَامَ بِعَشْرٍ آيَاتٍ، لَمْ يَكُنْ بِمِنَ الْغَافِلِينَ، وَمَنْ قَامَ بِبَعْضِ آيَاتِهَا، كَبْرَبِمِنْ الْمُقَانَطِرِينَ}\

Whoever stands (praying) with ten verses will not be written from the heedless ones; whoever stands with one-hundred verses will be written from the obedient; and whoever stands with one thousand verses will be written from the Muqantireen (those who spend huge amounts in the way of Allah).\(^3\)

‘Abdullah bin ‘Amr bin Al-Aas, may Allah be pleased with them, related that the Messenger of Allah ﷺ said:

\[\text{ِيَقَالُ لِمَشَابِهِ الْقُرْآنِ: افْرَأَىَ، وَأَرْتَىَ، وَرَتَلَّ كَمَا كَنَّتَ رَتَلَّ فِيِ}\

It will be said to the one who knows the Qur’an, read and climb (in ranking); and recite distinctly as you used to recite distinctly in the world, for indeed your rank is at the last verse

\(^1\) (Fatir 35:29)
\(^2\) Recorded by Al-Bukhari
\(^3\) Recorded by Abu Dawud, and the wording here is his; Ibn Khuzaimah, Ibn Hibban, and Ibn As-Sunni also relate it; and the Hadith has other narrations that attest to it.
that you recite.[1]

In yet another Hadith, Aishah, may Allah be pleased with her, related that the Messenger of Allah ﷺ said:

الذي يقرأ القرآن، وهو ماهر به، يسمع السمعة الكريمات البرزة، والذي يقرأ القرآن وسُمعت فيه، وهو عليه شافق، له أجران

The person who is proficient in the Qur'an is levelled with the obedient close angels. As for the person who reads the Qur'an, though it is difficult for him and though he stutters, he has two rewards.[2]

From the greatest of Allah's blessings for the Muslims is that He chose them to inherit the Book (the Qur'an), for Allah says:

ثُمَّ أُوْرِثْنِي الْكِتَابُ لَا يُضِلْنَا مِنْ عِبَادَتِنَا

Then we gave the Book (the Qur'an) for inheritance to such of Our worshippers whom We chose (the followers of Muhammad ﷺ). [3]

The Muslims have the honor of having the divine and uncorrupted words of their Lord, transmitted from generation to generation by so many people that its authenticity is a certain and established fact: Muslims recite the Qur'an today just as the first generation of Muslims recited it. Indeed it is Allah Almighty Who has protected and preserved the Qur'an:

أَنَا أَخْلَصُ الْزُّكُرَانَ الْكِتَابَ وَأَنَا لَمْ سَخَطْتَهُ

Verily, We: It is We who have sent down the Ihikr (i.e., the Qur'an) and surely, We will guard it (from corruption).[4]

Perhaps more is demanded from Muslims today, in light of present-day advancements, than at any other time in the past – in terms of preserving and memorizing the Qur'an, printing it, distributing it, translating its meanings into all languages – not to mention having

1 Abu Dawud, and the wording is his; and At-Tirmithi, who said, "A Hasan Hadith."

2 Agreed upon.

3 (Fatir 35:32)

4 (Al-HJR 15:9)
an understanding of the Qur’ān and applying its precepts based on the example of the Messenger of Allāh’s Companions.

‘Uthman, ‘Abdullah bin Mas‘ud, and ‘Ubai related that the Messenger of Allāh ᵃṣ used to teach them ten verses; they wouldn’t go beyond them to the next ten until they first learned what is in them in terms of action, and so they gained both knowledge and action.[¹]

Memorizing the Qur’ān, understanding its meanings and laws, applying and adhering to it – these comprise the way to honor for the Muslim nation, the way to its success and advancement. Allāh Almighty says:

أَلَمْ نَرْزَقَكُمْ مِنۡهُ أُرْثًا ۖ فَذَّرُوهُمۡ فِي دُنْيَاكُمۡ أَمَّا فِي جَاهِلِيَّةٍ

Indeed We have sent down to you (O mankind) a Book, (the Qur’ān) in which there is Ihikrukum, (your reminder or an honor for you i.e., the honor for the one who follows the teaching of Qur’an and acts on its orders). Will you not then understand? [²]

Manners When Dealing With The Qur’ān For The Youth[³]

There are many manners that I must adhere to when dealing with the Qur’ān:

1) I must honor and venerate the Qur’ān.
2) I do not place the Qur’ān behind me, intending to belittle it, nor do I neglect it. I do not enter the toilet with it, nor do I use its words in an inappropriate manner.
3) I do not physically lean on the Qur’ān, or on anything in which is a copy of the Qur’ān – such as a schoolbag.
4) I do not extend my feet, pointing with them to the Qur’ān.
5) I do not put the Qur’ān in filthy places.
6) I do not place the Qur’ān alongside filthy things – such as placing it on a shelf that contains shoes, magazines that contain

[¹] Sahib Sunan Abu Dawud
[²] (Al-Anbiya’ 21:10)
[³] As-Sidhuk wat-Tahtheeb for the second primary level. A curriculum prepared by Wazaratul-Ma’arif p. 9 and what follows it.
pictures, dirty clothes, or instruments of entertainment.
7) I do not tear pages from the Qur’ân, nor do I write in it.
8) While the Qur’ân is being recited or when I am reciting the Qur’ân, I do not occupy my mind with other matters.
9) When reciting the Qur’ân or when the Qur’ân is being recited, I do not play or laugh.
10) I place the Qur’ân always on top of other books.
11) I always place the Qur’ân in its special place.
12) When I want to touch the Qur’ân, I first make ablution.
13) When reciting the Qur’ân, I sit in a correct and decent position.
14) I treat the Qur’ân with respect and veneration; I neither fold it nor hold it from one end - I abstain from the former to prevent pages of the Qur’ân from falling out.
15) If I wish to recite any part of the Qur’ân at any time, I first recite, “’A’oothu Billâbi Minhass-Shaitaanir-Rajeem (I take protection in Allâh from the accursed Shaitan).”
16) As I am about to recite the beginning of a chapter of the Qur’ân, I first say, “Bismillâhir-Rabbaanir-Rabeem (In the Name of Allâh, the Most Beneficent, the Most Merciful).”
The *Tafsir* (Explanation) Of Certain Chapters Of The Qur'ân[1]

**Surat Al-Fatihah**

َبِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَٰنِ الرَّحِيمِ
الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ الْمَلِكِ الْمُلْكِ
مَالِكِ يَوْمِ الْدِّيْنِ ۛ إِنَّكَ نَجْسِيٓ
ّعَبْدُ وَإِنَّكَ نَجْسِيٓ أَهْدِنَا الْبَرَّ الْمُسْقِيمِ
ۚ ۛ صِرِّطَ الْقَرِينِ أَنْعَصُطُ عِلْمَهُ مِنْ خَلْقِهِ
َۚ ۛ اللَّهُ عَزَّ وَجَلِیْلُهُ ۛ لاَ إِلَآَّهَ إِلَّا هُوَ

In the Name of Allâh, the Most Beneficent, the Most Merciful. All the praises and thanks be to Allâh, the Lord of the ‘Alamin (mankind, jinn and all that exists). The Most Beneficient and the Most Merciful. The only Owner (and the Only Ruling judge) of the Day of Recompense (i.e., the Day of Resurrection). You (Alone) we worship and you (Alone) we ask for help (for each and everything). Guide us to the Straight Way. The Way of those on whom You have bestowed Your Grace, not (the way) of those who earned Your anger nor of those who went astray.[2]

ۚ ۛ بِسْمِ اللَّهِ

In the Name of Allâh

I begin by all of Allâh’s Names, so this embraces all of Allâh’s Beautiful Names.

ۚ ۛ اللَّهُ

Allâh

He is the True God, Who, because of His divine and perfect Qualities, alone deserves to be worshipped.

The Most Beneficent, the Most Merciful
These are two of Allâh’s Names, both of which indicate His vast mercy, the first of which embraces all things and everyone alive; the second of which is specific to the Hereafter, to the righteous followers of Allâh’s Messengers.

All the praises and thanks be to Allâh
Because Allâh Almighty has perfect and complete Attributes, He alone deserves all praise.

The Lord of the ‘Alamin
The Lord Who takes care of and causes the growth of all that exists, through His many favors – by creating them, providing for them, and guiding them to what is best for them in this world and in the Hereafter. The reality of this phrase means guiding to success in all that is good and keeping one away from all that is evil. “The Lord of all that exists,” meaning that He is the sole Creator and Planner of the universe. All blessings are from Him, while He doesn’t need anyone. From every viewpoint, all that is created is in need of Allâh. ‘Alamin” in this verse means all other than Allâh, which means all of His creation – such as the world of man, of jinn, of angels, and so on.

The only Owner (and the Only Ruling Judge) of the Day of Recompense (i.e., the Day of Resurrection)
The only Owner and King is He Who has complete sovereignty, which means that He orders, forbids, rewards, punishes – and has total control over the entire dominion. The dominion here is ascribed to the Day of Recompense, the Day of Resurrection, the Day in which people will be dealt with according to their deeds, whether good and bad.

You (Alone) we worship and you (Alone) we ask for help (for
each and everything)
We single You out alone for our worship and for when we seek help: we worship none but You and we seek help from none but from You. ‘Ibadah (worship) is a comprehensive term for all that Allāh loves and is pleased with, in terms of sayings and deeds, both apparent and hidden. Al-Isti’ānab (seeking help) means to rely upon Allāh for bringing benefits and for keeping away harm. ‘Ibadah and Al-Isti’ānab are the means to eternal happiness and the means to being saved from all evil. But we must keep in mind that ‘Ibadah is only ‘Ibadah when it is taken from the Messenger of Allāh ṣṣ and when one intends by it Allāh’s Face.

Guide us to the Straight Way
Show us, guide us, and help us to the Straight Path, which is the knowledge of truth and its application, and the way that leads to Allāh Almighty and His Paradise. This supplication is one of the most beneficial, and one of the most embracing of supplications for the worshipper of Allāh - and we are all His worshippers, and that is why we must invoke Allāh with it during our prayer.

The way of those on whom You have bestowed Your Grace
They are the Prophets, the truthful ones, the martyrs, and the righteous ones.

Not (the way) of those who earned Your anger
They are the Jews – and those of their like – who knew the truth yet abandoned it.

Nor of those who went astray
They are the Christians – and those of their like – the people of ignorance and misguidance.

Even though this Chapter is so brief, it contains that which no other
What Must Be Known About Islam

chapter of the Qur’ān contains. First, it covers the three categories of Tawhid:

1) *Ar-Rububiyyah* (Lordship), which is taken from this verse:

\[
\text{رَبُّ الْاَلْمِينَ}
\]

The Lord of the ‘Alamin

2) *Al-Ulūhiyyah* (singling out Allāh for worship), which is taken from,

\[
\text{اللّه}
\]

Allāh and,

\[
\text{إِيَّاكَ نَعْبِدُ وَإِيَّاكَ نَسْتَجِيبُونَ}
\]

You (Alone) we worship and you (Alone) we ask for help (for each and everything)

3) *Al-Asma’ was-Safat* (Names and Attributes): This category of Tawhid means to affirm for Allāh all those perfect Qualities that He affirmed for Himself or that His Messenger ﷺ affirmed for Him, without distorting, negating, comparing, or likening them to the qualities of creation – and without saying “how”. This category is indicated by the verse:

\[
\text{الْحَمْدُ لِلّه}
\]

All the praises and thanks be to Allāh

Prophethood is established in this verse:

\[
\text{أُهْدِنَا الْمَرْجَعَةَ الْمُسْتَقِيمَةَ}
\]

Guide us to the Straight Way

That we will be rewarded for our deeds is established in this verse:

\[
\text{مِنْ آيَاتِ رَبِّكَ ذَٰلِكَ يَوْمُ الْيَمِينِ}
\]

The only Owner (and the Only Ruling Judge) of the Day of Recompense (i.e., the Day of Resurrection)

While it establishes Divine Preordainment, the following verse also refutes the people of innovation and misguidance:
Guide us to the Straight Way

It also states that there is a truth that must be followed. In the following verse, sincerity in worshipping Allâh alone is established:

You (Alone) we worship and you (Alone) we ask for help (for each and everything).
In the Name of Allah, the Most Beneficent, the Most Merciful.

Say: “I seek refuge with (Allâh) the Lord of mankind. The King of mankind. The Ilâh (God) of mankind. From the evil of the whisperer (devil who whisper in the hearts of men) who withdraws (from his whispering in one’s heart after one remembers Allâh). Who whispers in the breasts of mankind. Of jinn and men.”[1]

When reciting this chapter, one seeks protection and refuge in the Lord, King, and God of mankind, from the Shaitan, who is the root of all evil, and whose activities include whispering into the hearts of men, beautifying evil to them, and giving it a handsome shape. At the same time, the Shaitan takes man away from all that is good, showing it to them in a form other than its true form. Then, when one remembers his Lord and takes refuge in Him from the accursed Shaitan, Shaitan recoils and draws back. This is why man should seek help, protection, and aid with Allâh’s Lordship over all of mankind, and with His Godhood (by which He alone deserves worship), the reason for which he created them (i.e., to worship Him alone, without associating partners with Him). The whispering referred to in this Surah may emanate from jinn and may emanate from man as well:

Of jinn and men.

[1] (An-Nas 114:1-6)
**Surat Al-Falaq**

In the Name of Allāh, the Most Beneficent, the Most Merciful.

Say: “I seek refuge with (Allāh) the Lord of Al-Falaq. From the evil of what He has created. And from the evil of the darkening (night) as it comes with its darkness; (or the moon as it sets or goes away). And from the evils of those who practice witchcraft when they blow in the knots. And from the evil of the envier when he envies.”[1]

Say: “I seek refuge”

I seek refuge, protection, and shelter with Allāh.

With (Allāh) the Lord of Al-Falaq

Who causes the seed-grain and the fruit-stone (like date-stone, etc.) to split and sprout.

From the evil of what He has created

This includes the evil of all that He created – man, jinn, animals, etc. One seeks refuge with their creator from the evil inside of them.

And from the evil of the darkening (night) as it comes with its darkness.

From the evil that occurs in the night, for during the night, evil spirits and harmful animals spread throughout the land.

[1] (Al-Falaq 113:1-5)
And from the evils of those who practice witchcraft when they blow in the knots.
From magicians who practice their sorcery by blowing into knots.
And from the evil of the envier when he envies
The envier is one who loves for blessings to be removed from the one whom he is jealous of; therefore one needs to seek protection in Allâh from his evil, so that by the Will of Allâh, his plots are foiled.
Surat Al-Ikhlas

In the Name of Allâh, the Most Beneficent, the Most Merciful.
Say: “He is Allâh, (the) One. Allâbus-Samad (Allâh – the Self-Sufficient Master, Whom all creatures need, He neither eats nor drinks). He begets not, nor was He begotten. And there is none coequal or comparable unto Him.”

Say: “He is Allâh, (the) One”
Say, believing it with certainty and knowing its meaning, that indeed Allâh is the One; He alone has the most beautiful Names and the most elevated Attributes; there is none equal or comparable to Him.

Allâbus-Samad (Allâh – the Self-Sufficient Master, Whom all creatures need, He neither eats nor drinks)
The One Whose help is sought and needed in all matters; all worshippers ask for their need from none but Him; they desire aid in their tasks and projects from none but Him – and that is because He is complete and perfect in His Qualities: therefore He is the All-Knowing, the One Whose Knowledge is complete; completely attentive of His creatures, He is the Most Merciful, Whose mercy embraces everyone in the heavens and in the earth.

He begets not, nor was He begotten
That is because He is the complete Self-Sufficient Master.

[1] (AI-Ikhlas 112:1-4)
And there is none coequal or comparable unto Him
Not in His Names, not in His Attributes, and not in His actions. This Surah deals with the third category of Tawhid, Al-Asma’ was-Sfat.
**Surat An-Nasr**

In the Name of Allāh, the Most Beneficent, the Most Merciful.

When there comes the help of Allāh and the Conquest. And you see that people enter in Allāh’s religion in crowds. So glorify the praises of your Lord, and ask for His forgiveness. Verily, He is the One who accepts the repentance and forgives.[1]

This *Surah* consists of three matters:

- Glad tidings for the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ.
- Orders for him ﷺ.
- And a hint as to the results of those glad tidings.

The glad tidings are of Allāh’s help for His Messenger ﷺ, of the Conquest of Makkah, and of people entering into Allāh’s religion in flocks; hence many people became from the followers and supporters of Islam, people who at one point used to be its enemies.

Allāh Almighty orders the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ to do the following after all of the above occur: to thank Him for those blessings, to glorify Him, to praise Him, and to seek His forgiveness.

In this *Surah*, Allāh Almighty hints to the continuation of victory and of the growth of Islam as long as the Prophet ﷺ glorifies Him, praises Him, and seeks His forgiveness. Allāh Almighty says:

> If you give thanks, I will give you more (of My blessings).[2]

At the time of its revelation, this *Surah* also hinted to the death of the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ: that it was near at hand.

---

In the Name of Allāh, the Most Beneficent, the Most Merciful.
Say: “O disbelievers! I worship not that which you worship. Nor will you worship that which I worship. And I shall not worship that which you are worshipping. Nor will you worship that which I worship. To you be your religion, and to me my religion.”[1]
Say, O Muhammad, to the disbelievers, openly and clearly:

I worship not that which you worship
I am innocent of that which you worship other than Allāh – whether you do so openly or secretly.

Nor will you worship that which I worship
And that is because you lack sincerity in your worship of Allāh, because the worship that is joined with Shīr (associating partners with Allāh) nullifies one’s worship and cancels his rewards for that worship; and in fact, such an act is not even called worship.

To you be your religion, and to me my religion.
You are innocent of what I practice and I am innocent of what you practice.

[1] (Al-Kāfīrūn 109:1-6)
**Surat Al-Kawthar**

In the Name of Allâh, the Most Beneficent, the Most Merciful

Verily, We have granted you Al-Kawthar. Therefore turn in prayer to your Lord and sacrifice. For he who hates you, he will be cut off.[1]

Allâh says to His Prophet ﷺ:

> Verily, We have granted you Al-Kawthar

Favors and blessings in abundance, included in which is the river called Al-Kawthar as well as the Basin (Hawdh), whose length is one month and whose width is one month; its water is whiter than milk and sweeter than honey; its vessels are as numerous as stars in the sky. Whoever takes a drink from it will never feel thirsty again.

Therefore turn in prayer to your Lord and sacrifice

After Allâh mentioned His favor upon His Messenger ﷺ and that He granted him Al-Kawthar, He then orders him to be grateful for His blessings, saying:

> Therefore turn in prayer to your Lord and sacrifice.

The two kinds of worship mentioned in this verse are among the best kinds of worship: prayer includes submission and reverence to Allâh, while the sacrifice – such as the Hady and the Udibiyyah – is also among the best forms of worship, for it consists of an added element: spending wealth.

---

For he who hates you, he will be cut off
The one who hates you, and the one who disparages you, is cut off from all good and from every virtue.
In the Name of Allâh, the Most Beneficent, the Most Merciful.

By Al-Asr (the time). Verily! Man is in loss. Except those who believe and do righteous good deeds, and recommend each other to the truth, and recommend one another to patience.\[^{[1]}\]

Here, Allâh Almighty swears by Al-Asr, the time, though Al-Asr is also said to mean the night and day, the time in which the deeds of man take place. Allâh Almighty can swear by whatever He wishes from His creation; His worshippers, however, may only swear by their Lord. Then Allâh informs us that man as a species is in a state of loss, except for those who are described with four qualities:

1) Faith in whatever Allâh ordered us to have faith in. Faith is not complete without knowledge.

2) They perform righteous deeds; this includes apparent and hidden deeds, deeds having to do with Allâh’s Rights and deeds having to do with the rights of His creatures - those deeds that are obligatory as well as those that are voluntary.

3) They recommend one another to the truth and to good, i.e., to faith and to righteous deeds.

4) They recommend one another to be patient in their obedience of Allâh, while avoiding disobedience to Him; they also recommend one another to be patient at those of His Decrees that may be painful.

\[^{[1]}\](Al-Asr 103:1-3)
**What Must Be Known About Islam**

**Surat Al-Bayyinah**

In the Name of Allâh, the Most Beneficent, the Most Merciful.

Those who believe from among the People of Scripture and among the polytheists, were not going to leave (their disbelief) until there came to them clear evidence. A Messenger from Allâh, reciting purified pages containing correct and straight laws from Allâh. And the People of the Scripture differed not until after there came to them clear evidence. And they were commanded not, but that they should worship Allâh, and worship none but Him Alone, and perform As-Salât and give Az-Zakât; and that is the right religion. Verily, those who disbelieve from among the People of Scripture and the polytheists will abide in the fire of Hell. They are the worst of creatures. Verily, those who believe and do righteous good deeds, they are the best of creatures. Their reward with their Lord is ‘Adn (Eden) Paradise (Gardens of Eternity), underneath which rivers flow, they will abide therein forever, Allâh well-pleased with them, and they with Him. That is for Him who fears His Lord.¹

Allâh Almighty says:

¹ (Al-Bayyinah 98:1-8)
Those who believe from among the People of Scripture
They are the Jews and the Christians.

And among polytheists
The rest of the nations who worship other than Allâh.

Were not going to leave (their disbelief) until there came to them clear evidence
A plain and clear proof.

A Messenger from Allâh
Allâh sent him to call people to Taubah, to worshipping Allâh sincerely and purely. Allâh revealed to him the Qur'ân, which he recites, teaching people the wisdom. He purifies them and takes them out of darkness, while bringing them into the light – by the Will of Allâh, and that is the religion of Islam.

Reciting purified pages
It is protected from the Shaitan; none but the purified touch it, and they are the angels.

Containing correct and straight laws from Allâh
Those purified pages contain truthful news and just orders, orders that guide to the truth and to the Straight Path. If the people do not submit and abandon their stubbornness, then that is because they differed not,

Until after there came to them clear evidence.
A clear evidence that required them to unite and to agree.

And they were commanded not, but that they should worship Allâh, and worship none but Him Alone

Hence they were ordered to worship Allâh alone in all religious matters and to stay away from worshipping all false deities, because worshipping them is contrary to pure Taubid.

And perform As-Salat and give Az-Zakat; and that is the right religion

Though both come under the general heading of worship (from the last verse), prayer and Zakat are specifically mentioned because of their high status in Islam, and because the one who establishes them necessarily establishes the other principles of the religion.

That is the right religion

Taubid and sincerity are the right religion. This verse says, therefore, that those who apply Allâh’s Book and the Prophet’s Sunnah are the ones who apply the religion that leads to the Gardens of Paradise.

Verily, those who disbelieve from among the People of Scripture and the polytheists will abide in the fire of Hell

Their punishment therein will be most severe.

They are the worst of creatures

That is because they knew the truth but abandoned it, losing out on this world and the Hereafter.

Verily, those who believe and do righteous good deeds, they
are the best of creatures
That is because they knew Allâh and worshipped Him without associating any partners with Him from the creation; hence they gained Gardens in Paradise.

Their reward with their Lord is 'Adn (Eden) Paradise (Gardens of Eternity)
Their reward with their Creator and God is the reward for their sincerity to Allâh in worship and for their faith and good deeds. The Gardens of 'Adn (Eden) are the best gardens of Paradise.

Underneath which rivers flow, they will abide therein forever, Allâh well-pleased with them, and they with Him.
Meaning the different gardens in Paradise, where they will abide forever; the life of bliss and pleasure they will have therein is an eternal one. Allâh is pleased with them and they with Him for all of the blessings and rewards He prepared for them; He gives them in Paradise that which no eye has seen, no ear has heard (or heard of) – that which has not even occurred to the heart of man.

That is for Him who fears His Lord
The one who fears Allâh and abstains from disobeying Him, all the while doing what is obligatory upon him, hoping for Allâh’s rewards and for eternal bliss in Paradise.
What Must Be Known About Islam

Surat Al-Qadr

In the Name of Allâh, the Most Beneficent, the Most Merciful.

Verily! We have sent it (this Qur’ân) down in the night of Al-Qadr (Decree). And what will make you know what the night of Al-Qadr (Decree) is? The night of Al-Qadr (Decree) is better than a thousand months. Therein descend the angels and the Ruh (Jibrîl) by Allâh’s permission with all Decrees, Peace! Until the appearance of dawn.¹

On the night of Al-Qadr, We have revealed the Qur’ân in its entirety from Al-Lawb Al-Malîfu to the heaven of the world, and then the Qur’ân was revealed sections at a time to the Prophet ﷺ, so a number of verses or a verse was revealed for the circumstances at the time. The period between the first verse of the Qur’ân being revealed to the Prophet ﷺ and the last verse is 23 years.

And what will make you know what the night of Al-Qadr (Decree) is?

For its significance is huge and truly amazing; acts of obedience performed on that night are rewarded for with a tremendous reward.

The night of Al-Qadr (Decree) is better then a thousand months.

This means that deeds performed on that night are better than deeds performed in one thousand other months.

¹ (Al-Qadr 97:1-5)
Therein descend the angels and the Rub (Jibril) by Allâh’s permission with all Decrees. The Rub (Jibril) and the angels descend; Jibril is specifically mentioned because of his nobleness and leadership. 

Peace! Until the appearance of dawn.

The night of Qadr is free from every evil and defect, and that blessed period begins at the setting of the sun and ends at dawn.
The Sunnah

In the Arabic language, Sunnah means a way, regardless of whether it is a good or evil way, a meaning that is confirmed in this Hadith:

من سننة حسنة، فلله أجرها وأجر من عمل بها إلى يوم القيامة، ومن سننة سائبة فعلها وزرها، وورز من عمل بها إلى يوم القيامة

Whoever establishes a good Sunnah (way), then he has its reward and the reward of all those who apply it until the Day of Judgement. And whoever establishes an evil Sunnah (way), then upon him is its sin and the sin of all those who apply it until the Day of Judgement.[1]

As a term used by scholars of Hadith, Sunnah means, “All that is transmitted from the Prophet ﷺ, in terms of speech, deed, approval, his description – his physical description and a description of his qualities, or his biography, both before the beginning of his mission and after it.”

In one of his legal rulings, Imam Taqi Ad-Deen Ibn Taymiyyah said, “The Prophetic Hadith – when mentioned in general – points to what is related from the Prophet’s speech, action, and approval, for his Sunnah is established from these three facets. It is compulsory, then, to believe and have faith in the information he told us of. It is incumbent upon us to follow what he legislated – commands, prohibitions, and rulings that indicate something is lawful. The verses of the Qur’an that refer to Prophethood indicate that the Prophets are infallible in what they inform us of regarding Allâh; all of what they tell us is true, and that is the meaning of Prophethood, which implies that Allâh Almighty inspires a Prophet ﷺ. And the Rasul (Messenger) is ordered to invite the creation to the messages of his Lord.”

[1] Muslim
An Explanation Of The Four Hadiths Around Which The Entire Religion Revolves

The First Hadith:

Indeed deeds are based on intentions, and for each person is that which he intended.

Deeds of speech or action, both outward and inner deeds – none are complete without intention (Niyyah), a fact that shows the great significance of intention in Islam. When one does a good deed without intention, he benefits nothing from that deed and Allâh Almighty doesn’t accept it from him.

And for each person is that which he intended

If by his deed, one sincerely worships Allâh, seeking His pleasure alone, then from Allâh he will have a reward; but if he intended some worldly benefit, making his worship a means of achieving that benefit, or if he had a wicked intention, then his is that which he intended, and his accountability is with Allâh.

The Second Hadith:

The lawful is clear and the unlawful is clear...

In the plain verses of His Book, Allâh clarified this for, and the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ explained it to us in his pure Shari’ah. The lawful is clear: it is that which souls find comfort in, matters in which there is no doubt whatsoever; and that the unlawful is clear for one who wishes to stay away from it. Between the lawful and unlawful are matters that are not so clear. If a Muslim stays away from those matters, he will have safeguarded his religion and honor. But whoever hovers around those matters will necessarily fall into what is prohibited. We must fear Allâh in our sayings and deeds, taking the clear path that Allâh and His Messenger ﷺ delineated for us. In a Hadith:


Leave that which causes you doubt to that which doesn’t cause you doubt.

Meaning, leave that which you are not sure about – is it lawful and harmless or not? And instead go to that which you have certain knowledge about – that it is indeed lawful and harmless.

The Third Hadith:

From the goodness of one’s Islam is to leave that which does not concern him.

Under Islam come faith and Ihsan. This Hadith is one of the foundations of the religion. The Muslim is described with one of two qualities: he is either one who is upright, obeying Allâh and His Messenger’s commandments, staying away from base and meaningless matters – then he is the true Muslim. Then there is one who follows up on base and meaningless speech and action, not deeming himself to be above rumours and false speech – He has deviated from the true and upright religion. Let us consider the Prophet’s saying:

The Muslim is he from whom the Muslims are safe, safe from his tongue and his hand.

The Fourth Hadith:

Whoever introduces into this matter of ours that which is not from it, then it is rejected.

This proves that every innovation introduced in the religion – meaning that it doesn’t have a basis in the Qur’ân or Sunnah, regardless of whether it is a saying or a deed, such as those deeds that Allâh didn’t legislate and the Prophet didn’t command us with – then it is rejected for the one who introduced it. This is because his action is not founded on the Qur’ân and Sunnah. Whoever’s action is in agreement with Allâh’s Book and His Messenger’s Sunnah, his action is accepted – by the Will of Allâh.
Selected Invocations For The Young And Old[^1]

How To Supplicate, And The Manners Of Supplication

1) Supplication is worship; not only did Allāh order us to supplicate to Him, but He also promised to answer our supplications:

And your Lord said: "Invoke Me, I will respond to you. Verily! Those who scorn My worship they will surely enter Hell in humiliation!"[^2]

2) Immediately before and after supplicating, praise Allāh and send prayers upon the Prophet ﷺ.

3) Do not invoke other than Allāh.

4) Show reverence and submission to Allāh as you are supplicating.

5) Be persistent in supplication, but do not be impatient regarding its answer; furthermore, invoke Allāh during those times when you are more likely to be answered.

6) Supplicate for yourself, your parents, your brothers, your relatives, the Muslims, your sick neighbors, those Muslims who are dead, the leaders, the scholars, and those who have done you a favor. Also, invoke Allāh to guide sinners.

7) Never, even when angry, supplicate against yourself, your family, or even your wealth.

8) When you hear others supplicating, say “Aameen” (which means, “O Allāh, answer!”)

* The Benefits Of Supplication And Remembrance

1) Achieving closeness to Allāh.

2) Supplication is one of the means by which a Muslim achieves his goals and aims.

[^1]: Assuluk wat-Tahtheeb for the third primary level.
[^2]: (Ghcfir 40:60)
Supplications And Phrases Of Remembrance For Both The Young And Old\textsuperscript{[1]}

**What you say...**

**Just before entering the toilet:**

\begin{quote}
Bismillâh. Allâhumma Innee A’oothu Bika Minal-Khubûthi wal-Khaba’ith.
\end{quote}

“In the Name of Allâh. O Allâh, I take refuge with You from all evil and evildoers.”

**When exiting from the toilet:**

\begin{quote}
Ghu, fraanaka.
\end{quote}

“I ask You (Allâh) for forgiveness.”

**Upon entering the Masjid:**

\begin{quote}
Allâbunma, fi,ab lee Abwaaba Rabmatika.
\end{quote}

“O Allâh, open the gates of Your mercy for me.”

**Upon leaving the Masjid:**

\begin{quote}
Allâbunma Innee As’aluka Min Faddlika
\end{quote}

“O Allâh, I ask You from Your favor.”

**Before sleeping:**

\begin{quote}
Bismikallâbunma Ak’ya wa Amoot.
\end{quote}

“In Your Name, O Allâh, I live and die.”

\textsuperscript{[1]} Curriculum for the second primary level.
Upon waking up from sleep:

«الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ الَّذِي أَحْيَانَا بَعْدَ مَا أَمَاتَنَا وَإِلَيْهِ الْنُّشُورُ»

Al-Hamdu illàbillathee Alhyaanaa Ba’da Maa Amaatanaa wa ilaybin-Nusboor.

“All praise is for Allâh Who gave us life after having taken it from us and unto Him is the resurrection.”

Upon sneezing

«الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ»

Al-Hamdu illâb.

“All praise is for Allâh.”

Upon hearing somebody sneezing and saying, “All praise is for Allâh”: say to him:

«يَرْحَمُكَ اللَّهُ»

Yarhamukallâb.

“May Allâh have mercy upon you.”

If you are the one who sneezed, and heard someone invoking Allâh to have mercy on you, say to that person:

«يَهْدِيَكُمُ اللَّهُ وَيُصَلِّحْ بَالْكُلُّ»

Yabeekumullâh, wa Yuslihu Baalakum.

“May Allâh guide you and rectify your condition.”

Upon sitting in a car or in (or on) any other means of conveyance:

«سُبْحَانَ الَّذِي سَعَرَ لَنَا هَذَا وَمَا كَانَ لَهُ مَقَارِبٌ وَإِنَّا إِلَى رَبِّنَا لَمَّا تُهْتَيْلُونَ»

Subbaanallathee Sakbkbara Lana Hatba, wa Maa Kunnaa Labu Muqrineena wa Innaa Ilaa Rabbina Lamunqaliboon.

“Gbrifed is He Who has subjected this to us, and we could have never had it (by our efforts). And verily, to our Lord we indeed are to return.”
When you are in fear: seek refuge in Allâh from the accursed Shaitan.

Supplications Of The Muslim During The Day And Night

Supplications For When One Is About To Sleep And When One Wakes Up

* When on his bed and about to sleep, the Muslim should say:

Allâhumma Aslamtu Nfsee Ilayka, wa wajbatu Wajbee Ilayka, wa Fawwadhibtu Amree Ilayka, wa Aja'tu Thabree Ilayka, Raghbatan wa Rabhatan Ilayka, Laa Ma'jaa' wa Laa Mar.jaa Minka Illaa Ilayka, Aamantu Bi Kitaabikallathee Anzalta, wa Bnabiyyatkallatbee Arsalta.

O Allâh, I submit my soul unto You and I entrust my affair unto You, and I turn my face towards You, and I totally rely on You, in hope and fear of You. Verily there is no refuge nor safe haven from You except with You. I believe in Your Book which You have revealed and in Your Prophet whom You have sent.

Before sleeping, recite Ayatal-Kursi (Related by Al-Bukhari). Also, join your hands together and blow into them, after which you recite the last three Surabs of the Qur'an. Then wipe your hands on as much of your body as you are able; repeat the above three times (Related by Al-Bukhari and Muslim). You should also recite the last two verses from Surat Al-Baqarah (Al-Bukhari and Muslim). Furthermore, say “Subhaanalldh” (How perfect Allâh is!) thirty-three times, “Al-Hamdu lillâb” (All praise is for Allâh) thirty-three times, and “Allâbu Akbar” (Allâh is the Most Great) thirty-three times.

* When turning over in the night, say:

La Ilaha Illallahul Waabidul Qabbaar, Rabbus Samaawati Wal-Ardh, wa Maa Bainahumul Azeezul Ghaafir.

"None has the right to be worshipped except Allah. The One, Al-Qabbar (The One Who Subdues). Lord of the heavens and the earth and all between them. The Exalted in might, the Oft-Forgiving."

* Upon experiencing unrest, fear, worry and the like during sleep, say:

A’oothu Bikalimatillahit Taammati, Min Ghadabihi wa Iqaabihi, wa Sharri Ibaadihi, wa Min Hamazaatisbaayateeni, wa An Yabdubroon.

"I take refuge in the perfect Words of Allah from His anger and punishment, and from the evil of His servants, and from the madness and appearance of devils."

* Upon having a bad dream, do the following:

- Spit (lightly) three times to your left.
- Seek refuge in Allah from the Sattan (and from the evil that you saw).
- Hence the dream will not harm you (Al-Bukhari and Muslim).
- Turn, sleeping on the opposite side of what you were previously sleeping on. (Muslim)
- Do not mention your dream to anyone. (Al-Bukhari and Muslim)

* Upon waking up, say:

[1] Recorded by Al-Hakim, who declared it to be authentic; Ath-Thahabi agreed.
[2] Recorded by Abu Davud and At-Tirmithi, to whom belongs the above wording. He said, “It is a Hasan Gharib Hadith.”
Al-Hamdu illâbillathee Akyanaa Ba’da Maa Amaatanaa
wa Ilaybin-Nusoor

“All praise is for Allâh Who gave us life after having taken it from us and unto Him is the resurrection.”[1]

And,

الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ الَّذِي غَافِقَيْنَ فِي جُسْدِي وَرَزَّ عَلَيْيْ رُوُجٍي وَأُذُنَ لِي تَذْكِرُهُ

Al-Hamdu illâbillatthee ‘Aṣfaanee Fee Jasadee wa Radda Alayya Roobee, wa Atbna lee Bitbikerib.

“All praise is for Allâh Who restored to me my health and returned my soul and has allowed me to remember Him.”[2]

Supplications For The Morning And Evening

* Say in the morning:

اللَّهُمَّ بِكَ أُصْبِحْنَا، وَبِكَ أَصْبِحْنَا، وَبِكَ نَحْيَنَا، وَبِكَ نَمُوتُ، وَإِلَيْكَ

Allâhumma Bika Asabnaa wa Bika Amsaynaa, wa Bika Nakyyaa, wa Bika Namootu, wa Ilaybin-Nusoor.

“O Allâh, by Your leave we have reached the morning and by Your leave we have reached the evening, by Your leave we live and die and unto You is our resurrection.”[3]

* In the evening, say:

اللَّهُمَّ بِكَ أُصْبِحْنَا، وَبِكَ أُصْبِحْنَا، وَبِكَ نَحْيَنَا، وَبِكَ نَمُوتُ، وَإِلَيْكَ

Allâhumma Bika Amsaynaa, wa Bika Asabnaa, wa Bika Nakyyaa, wa Bika Namootu, wa Ilaybin-Maseer.

“O Allâh, by Your leave we have reached the evening and by Your leave we have reached the morning, by Your leave we live and die and unto You is our return.”[4]

---

[1] Al-Bukhari and Muslim
[2] Recorded by Tirmithi
[3] Recorded by Al-Tirmithi
Supplications Related To One's Attire

* When wearing a garment, say:

"الحمدُ للهِ الَّذِي كَسَانِي هَذَا، وَزَرَّأَهِ مِنْ عَيْرٍ حَوْلِي وَبَيْنِي وَلَا فَوْرٍ"

Al-Hamdu lillâl-lathee Kasaanee Hathaa, wa Razaqaneebi Min Ghaarii Hawlin Minnee wa Laa Quwvatin.

“All praise is for Allâh Who has clothed me with this garment and provided it for me, with no power nor might from myself.”¹

* Before undressing, say:

"بِسْمِ اللهِ"

Bismillâh (In the Name of Allâh).²

* Upon wearing a new garment, say:

"اللَّهَمَّ لَكَ الْحَمْدُ أَنتَ كَسْنَتَيْهِ، أَمَالَكَ مِنْ حِبْرِي وَحَيْرَ مَا ضَنَّ"

Allâhunma Lakal-Hamdu, Anta Kasawnteebi, As’aluka min Khairiibi wa Khairi Maa Sun’t’a Labu, wa A’oottu Bika Min Sharribi, wa Sharri Maa Sun’t’a Labu.

“O Allâh, for You is all praise, You have clothed me with it (i.e., the garment), I ask You for the good of it and the good for which it was made, and I seek refuge with You from the evil of it and the evil for which it was made.”³

* When you see your brother Muslim wearing new clothing, say to him:

"إِلَّهَ الْجَدِيدَ، وَعَشَّتْ حَيَادًا، وُلْتَ شَهِيدًا"

Ilbas Jadeedan, wa ‘Ish Hameedan, wa Mut Shabeedan.

“Wear anew, live commendably, and die as a martyr.”⁴

---

¹ Recorded by Abu Dawud
² Recorded by At-Tabarani
³ Recorded by Abu Dawud, and this wording is his; At-Tirmithi related it as well, and he declared it to be Hasan.
⁴ Recorded by Ibn Majah
Supplications Related To Food

* As you are about to eat, say:

\[
\text{Bismillâh (In the Name of Allâh).}
\]

And if you forget to say this before eating, say upon remembering:

\[
\text{Bismillâbi Awvalabu wa Aakbirabu.}
\]

“In the Name of Allâh in its beginning and end.”[1]

* Upon finishing a meal, say:

\[
\text{Al-Hamdu I'llâbi-l-Itbee At'amanee Hatbat-ta'aama, wa Razaqaneebi Min Ghaari Haulim-Minnee wa Laa Quwwatin.}
\]

All praise is for Allâh Who fed me this food and provided it for me without any might nor power from myself.”[2]

* If you are about to break your fast, say:

\[
\text{Thababatb-Thama'u Wabtalattil-Urooq Wa Thabatal- Ajru In Shaa' Allâb.}
\]

“The thirst has gone and the veins are quenched, and reward is confirmed, if Allâh wills.”[3]

* If one gave you food or drink, say:

\[
\text{Allâbhumna At'im Man At'amanee Wasaqi Man Saqaane.}
\]

“O Allâh, feed him who fed me, and provide drink for him who provided me with drink.”[4]

[1] Recorded by At-Tirmithi
[2] Recorded by Ahmad
[3] Recorded by Abu Dawud
[4] Recorded by Muslim
* When breaking fast in someone’s home, supplicate for him, saying:

أَفْتَرِ عَلَيْكُمُ الْمَلَائِكَةَُّ
وْأَكُلُّ طَعَامَكُمُ الْإِبَارَةَ،ُّ وَصُلِّ عَلَيْكُمُ
الْمَلَائِكَةَُّ

Aftara ‘Indakumus-Saa’imoona wa Akala Ta’amakumul-
Abraaru, wa Sallat ‘Alaykumul-Malaa’ikatu.

May the fasting break their fast in your home, and may the
dutiful and pious eat your food, and may the angels send
prayers upon you.”[1]

Supplications Related To One’s Home

* When you enter the home, remember Allâh (a practice that is
related by Muslim). Then give greetings of peace to the members
of your household, for Allâh Almighty says:

قَدْ صَلَّى عَلَى نَفْسِكَ

But when you enter the houses, greet one another with a
greeting from Allâh (i.e., say: As-Salâmû Alaikum – peace be
on you) blessed and good.[2]

And before you enter the house of your brother, seek his permission
first:

وَهُمْ هَٰذِهِ عَوْمَانُكُمْ نَفْسُكُمْ
وَعُنْسِبُوا وَأَلْقُوا وَأَلْقُوا

O you who believe! Enter not houses other than your own,
until you have asked permission and greeted those in them –
that is better for you, in order that you may remember. [3]

* When leaving the home:

Bîsmillâh, Tawakkaltu ‘Alallâh, Laa Hawla wa Laa Quwwa-
ta Illa Bîllâh.

[1] Recorded by Abu Dawud
“In the Name of Allâh, I place my trust in Allâh, and there is neither might nor power except with Allâh.”[1]

**Supplications Related to the Wudhu**

* When starting ablution, say:

```
Bismillâh (In the Name of Allâh). (Related by At-Tirmithi)
```

* Upon completing Wudhu’, say:

```
Ashhadu An Laa Ilaha Illallâh, Wabdalhu Laa Shareeka Labu, 
wa Ashbadu Anna Muhammadan ‘Abdubu wu Rasoolub.
```

“I bear witness that none has the right to be worshipped except Allâh, alone, without partner, and I bear witness that Muhammad is His slave and Messenger.”[2]

And the following addition is found in the narration of At-Tirmithi:

```
Allâhumma j’alnee Minat-Tawwaabeena, Wa j’alnee Minal-Mutatahhireen.
```

“O Allâh, make me of those who return to You often in repentance and make me of those who remain clean and pure.”

**Supplications Related To The Masjid**

* When going to the Masjid, say:

```
Allâhumma j’al Fee Qalbee Nooran, wa Fee Lisaanee Nooran,
```

[1] Recorded by At-Tirmithi

[2] Muslim
“O Allāh, place within my heart light, and upon my tongue light, and within my ears light, and within my eyes light, and place behind me light and in front of me light and above me light and beneath me light. O Allāh, bestow upon me light.”[1]

* Upon entering the Ṣaḥạb, say:

> بِسْمِ اللَّهِ وَ الْسَّلَامُ عَلَى رَسُولِ اللَّهِ، اللَّهُمَّ اغْفِرْ لِي ذُنُوبِي

_Bismillāh, was-Salaamu ‘Alaa Rasoolillāh. Allāhumma ‘āfkh li ‘Awnāb ‘R-ḥumāyik_

In the name of Allāh, and peace be upon the Messenger of Allāh. O Allāh, forgive me my sins.”[2]

> اللَّهُمَّ افتح لي أبواب رحمةك

_Allāhumma ‘āfkh lee Abwaaba Rakhmatik_

“O Allāh, open the gates of Your mercy for me.”[3]

* When leaving the Ṣaḥạb, say:

> بِسْمِ اللَّهِ وَ الْسَّلَامُ عَلَى رَسُولِ اللَّهِ، اللَّهُمَّ اغْفِرْ لِي ذُنُوبِي

_Bismillāh, was-Salaamu ‘Alaa Rasoolillāh. Allāhumma ‘āfkh li ‘Awnāb_

“In the Name of Allāh, and peace be upon the Messenger of Allāh. O Allāh, forgive me my sins.”[4]

> اللَّهُمَّ إِني أشْكَأْلُ مِنْ فَضْلِكَ

_Allāhumma Innee As’aluka Min Fadhlik_

“O Allāh, I ask You from Your favor.”[5]

---

[1] Recorded by Muslim
[2] Recorded by Ibn Majah
[3] Recorded by Muslim
[4] Recorded by Ibn Majah
[5] Recorded by Muslim
Supplication For The Expiation Of Sins At The Conclusion Of A Gathering

"Subhanakal-laahumma wa bhamdika Asbabu An Llaa ilaha illa Anta, Astaghfiruka wa atoobu ilayk."

"How perfect You are, O Allah, and I praise You. I bear witness that none has the right to be worshipped except You. I seek Your forgiveness and turn to You in repentance."[1]

Visiting The Sick

* When you visit your sick Muslim brother, wipe his right hand three times, saying:


Allahuumma Rabbana, As-salaamu alayka."

Visiting The Sick

And say:

"La ba’sa taboorun in sha’Allah.

"It is no harm, rather it is purification, if Allah wills."[3]

And:

"As’alullah al-‘Azim, rabb al-‘azim al-‘Azim, an’fasilak."
“I ask Allâh, the Supreme, Lord of the Magnificent Throne to cure you.”[1]

* When performing Ruqyab (i.e., reciting phrases of remembrance or invocations) over the sick, say:

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ أَرْقِيَّكَ، مِنْ كُلِّ شَيْءٍ يَوْقِدُكَ، مِنْ سُلْطَةٍ كُلِّ نَفْسٍ، وَكَبِيرٍ

خَالِدَ. بِسْمِ اللَّهِ أَرْقِيَّكَ، وَاللَّهُ بَلَّغُاَكَ


“In the Name of Allâh do I make Ruqyab for you, from all things that may harm you, from the evil of every soul, from the evil eye of the jealous one. In the Name of Allâh do I make Ruqyab for you, and may Allâh cure you.”[2]

Supplication For When Afflicted With Hardship

لا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ الْعَظِيمُ الْخَلِيمُ، لَّا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ رَبُّ الْعَرْشِ الْعَظِيمِ،

لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ رَبُّ السَّمَاوَاتِ وَرَبُّ الْأَرْضِ رَبُّ الْعَرْشِ الْكَرِيمِ


“None has the right to be worshipped except Allâh, the Supreme, the Forbearing. None has the right to be worshipped except Allâh, Lord of the Magnificent Throne. None has the right to be worshipped except Allâh, Lord of the heavens, Lord of the earth and Lord of the Noble Throne.”[3]

Supplication For Entering The Marketplace

لا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ وَحْدَهُ لَا شَرِيكَ لَهُ، لَهُ الْمَلَاكُّ وَلَهُ الْحَمْدُ، يُصِيِّحُ

فَوَلِيَّتُهُ، وَمَنْ حَيٌّ لَّا يَمْتَرُ، يَبْطَنُ الْخَيْرُ وَهُوَ عَلَيْ كُلِّ شَيْءٍ قَدِيرٌ

Laa Ialaaba Illallahu, Wabdalabu Laa Shaareeka Labu, Labul-

[1] Recorded by At-Tirmithi
[2] Recorded by At-Tirmithi
[3] Agreed upon
Must Be Known About Islam

Mulku wa Labul-Hamdu, Yul'yyee wa Yumeetu, wa Huwa Hayyun Laa Yamootu, Biyadibil-Khairu, wa Huwa 'Ala Kulli Sbay'in Qadeer.

"None has the right to be worshipped except Allāh, alone, without partner, to Him belongs all sovereignty and praise. He gives life and causes death, and He is living and does not die. In His Hand is all good and He has power over all things."

Supplication Said To One Who Does You A Favor

Jazaakallâhu Khaifan.

"May Allāh reward you with goodness."

If one had lent you money, say the following to him when you pay him back:

Baarakallâhu Laka Fee Ahlika wa Maalika.

"May Allāh bless you in your family and wealth."

From The Supplications Of Prayer

Abu Bakr As-Siddiq, may Allāh be pleased with him, related that he asked the Messenger of Allāh, "Teach me an invocation that I can supplicate with in my prayer." The Prophet said:

Allāhunna Innee Thalamtu No'see Thulman Katbeeran, wa Laa Yagl firath-Thunooba Illa Anta, Fagl fir lee Magl firatian Min 'Indika, Warhamnee, Innaka Antal-Ghc foorur-Rabeem.

"O Allāh, I have indeed oppressed my soul excessively, and none can forgive sins except You, so forgive me a forgiveness from Yourself and have mercy upon me. Surely, You are the Most Forgiving, the Most Merciful."

[1] Recorded by At-Tirmithi, and the wording is his; it is also related by Al-Hakim.
The Prophet’s Biography And His Manners[1]

His Birth

The Messenger of Allah was born to a family well known for their honorable manners; Arabs, as a whole, acknowledge his noble lineage; they admit to his family’s leadership over the Arabs, to their eloquent speech, to their noble manners, to their bravery and skills of war, and to their compassion for the weak. His is a Hashimi family, from the tribe of Quraish.

His home city is Makkah, in which he was born on Monday, the 12th of Rabi’ Al-Awwal, 570, the year that is known as the Year of the Elephant.

His Lineage

He is Muhammad bin ‘Abdullah bin ‘Abdul-Muttalib bin Hashim bin ‘Abd-Munaf bin Qusay bin Kilab bin Murrah bin Ka'b bin Lu'ayy bin Ghalib bin Fahr bin Malik bin An-Nadhr bin Kinanah bin Khuzaimah bin Mudrikah bin Ilyas bin Mudar bin Nizar bin Ma'd bin ‘Adnan.

The Prophet’s lineage traces back to Isma’il, peace be upon him. His mother Aminah bint Wahb belongs to Quraysh – and Wahb was one of the nobles of the Arabs.

The Beginning Of Revelation To The Messenger Of Allah

The Messenger of Allah used to perform worship in the cave of Hira’ (a mountain in Makkah), when, one day, Jibril, peace be upon him, came to him and said, “Read.”

“I am not one who can read,” he said. So Jibril, peace be upon him, embraced the Prophet three times, saying, “Read.” And each time, the Prophet said, “I am not one who can read.” And so Almighty revealed:

Read! In the Name of your Lord, Who has created (all that exists).[2]

[2] (Al-‘Alaq 96:1)
This is the first verse revealed from the Qur'ān.

**His Invitation To A Purely Monotheistic Religion**

After the first revelation, the Prophet ﷺ stayed in Makkah for three years, inviting specific people to devote their worship to Allāh Almighty alone. Then, in the next stage, he announced his message to all: that they should worship Allāh alone, without worshipping others or associating partners with Him in worship. He continued calling them for ten years, and then the five prayers were prescribed. After praying in Makkah for three years, he was ordered to migrate to Al-Madinah, where he was commanded with the rest of the Islamic legislation – there he ﷺ died, yet his religion remains. There is no matter that is good except that he ﷺ invited his nation to it, and no evil except that he ﷺ warned his nation from it.

**The Prophet’s Character And Manners**

I can summarize for you his noble and grand manners in one phrase: The Prophet ﷺ adorned himself with all of the exalted and grand manners that are mentioned in the Noble Qur’ān. He is a complete example for mankind, yet only those who are superior in character and manners follow him ﷺ.

Perhaps you already know that the Qur’ān pointed out and encouraged us to adorn ourselves with every exalted and noble characteristic or manner.

Patience, forbearance, generosity, bravery, justice, truthfulness, modesty, justice in fulfilling the promise, satisfaction with having only a little – when you read about any of these characteristics in a verse of the Qur’ān, be perfectly sure that this characteristic is found in the Prophet ﷺ to a greater degree than it is found in anyone who preceded him, or anyone who came after him ﷺ.

Seeking permission to enter another person’s home; arguing with those of a contrary view with better and more honorable words; lowering one’s voice, yet raising it when needed, such as when addressing a group of people; walking humbly on the earth – and when you read of these manners in a verse of the Qur’ān, know that

---

[1] From the book Muhammad Rasoolullāh ﷺ wa Kbaatamun-Nabiyyeen, by the Shāikh of Al-Azhar, Muhammad Al-Khidhr Husain, with minor editing.
it is one of the Messenger of Allâh’s manners and that he would never be derelict regarding it.

I do not say all of this simply because he was conveying the Qur’ân, and from the very nature of one who conveys the Qur’ân is that he applies its exalted and grand manners; rather, I base what I say both on the above and on how the Qur’ân describes him, such as in this verse:

\[
\text{And verily, you (O Muhammad) are on an exalted standard of character.}^{[1]}
\]

Then I base my conclusions on the books of authentic Sunnah, books that contain such of his noble and grand manners as will amaze you.

He Faced Many Hardships

When reading the Prophet’s biography, you will – if Allâh wills – see how he faced hardships and calamities without weakening. He would bear hardships without shaking or deviating from his set course. Sufficient as an example of his forbearance is the harm that was inflicted upon him in Makkah, before he migrated to Al-Madinah. Then you can look further and see the hardships he faced during many different battles. In the face of all of the above, his determination only strengthened and his patience increased.

The Prophet’s Humbleness

The Prophet’s humbleness was natural. His character when he and his followers were weak and when he was alone in calling to Allâh, having to deal with harm inflicted upon him by the foolish from among the inhabitants of Makkah, is the same character as he had after migrating and after defeating his enemies and after people entered into Allâh’s religion in multitudes.

Some Of The Well-Known Manners From His Biography

When entering a gathering, rather than seeking a location that signified importance or status, the Prophet would sit beside the last man who entered, or in other words, in the first open space that

\[^{[1]}\text{(Al-Qalam 68:4)}\]
would have been available for any newcomer. He would give a share of his company to all those who were present at a gathering, so that no one would think that another Companion was more honored than he.

The Prophet ﷺ wouldn’t cut anyone off in his speech; instead he waited until that person finished. Either the person would finish or the Prophet ﷺ would stand.

If a man welcomed him and shook his hand, the Prophet ﷺ would not remove his hand from the other man’s hand, always waiting until the other man pulled back his hand first.

Nor would he ﷺ turn his face away from that man until he turned away his face first.

Anas bin Malik, may Allâh be pleased with him, said, “Among the people, the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ had the best character, (we would notice this) even though he would mix with us often. So much so that he said to my young brother,

"يا أبا عمير ما فعلت النعير"

O Abu ‘Umar what did An-Nughair do.”[1]

**His Lack Of Care For Material Possessions And Worldly Comfort**

The Prophet ﷺ took care not to seek out the pleasures and treasures of this world, even though the world came running to him, especially after the conquest of Makkah. He didn’t change at all in his ways – not in his eating habits, not in his clothing, and not in the furniture of his home.

‘Aishah, may Allâh be pleased with her, said, “Since they came to Al-Madinah, the family of Muhammad ﷺ never filled themselves with food for three nights in a row, until he (the Prophet ﷺ) died.”

She also said, “The family of Muhammad ﷺ never ate two meals in one day unless one of those meals was dates.”

In Jami’ As-Sahih, Imam Al-Bukhari related that ‘Umar bin Al-

---

[1] Here the Prophet ﷺ was joking with a young boy and comforting him at the same time regarding the death of his bird; the words rhyme in Arabic and carry the said effects.
Khattab, may Allâh be pleased with him, once entered upon the Prophet ﷺ, who was lying down on a sandy mat, and there was no mattress between him and the mat. The effects of the mat left traces on his sides. 'Umar, may Allâh be pleased with him, said to him, “O Messenger of Allâh, invoke Allâh to give generously to your nation, for indeed the Persians and Romans have been given generously and have been given the world, yet they do not worship Allâh.” Now sitting and no longer reclining, the Prophet ﷺ said:

أو في هذَا أَيْبَنْ أَحْقَابٌ! أَيْبَنْ أَحْقَابٌ! أَيْبَنْ أَحْقَابٌ!
في الْحَيَاةِ الدُّنْيَا

What is this you are saying O son of Al-Khattab! Indeed they are a people who have hastened their pleasures in the life of this world.

His Mercy And Gentleness

The Prophet ﷺ had a very merciful heart, he loved generosity, and he had a cheerful face. It is known from his biography that he never once struck another with his hand; he ﷺ never struck a woman or a slave. The only occasion on which he physically inflicted harm upon others was when he was fighting in the way of Allâh.

One person who informed us of the Prophet’s mercy was Malik bin Huwairith, may Allâh be pleased with him, who said, “We, a group of young men of about the same age, went to the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ. We stayed with him for twenty nights, after which he thought that we were missing our families, and so he asked us regarding the families we left behind, and we informed him about them. He was gentle and merciful and said,

إِرجُجُوا إِلَى أَهْلِيكُمْ تَعُدُّوُهُمْ وَمُرَوُّهُمْ وَصَلُّوا كَمَا رَأَيْتُونِي أَصْلَى

Return to your families; teach them and order them. And pray as you have seen me pray.”

Malik, may Allâh be pleased with him, said he was “gentle and merciful,” a statement that he could only have said about the Prophet ﷺ after having witnessed the Prophet’s gentleness and mercy and after having witnessed those qualities on more than one occasion during their stay.
In *Shama'il-At-Tirmidhi*, (no. 105) ‘Abdullah bin Juz’ said, “I have not seen anyone smile more than the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ.”

Jarir bin ‘Abdullah Al-Bajali, may Allâh be pleased with him, said, “The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ was never inaccessible to me from the day I accepted Islam, and he would never see me without smiling.”[1]

**His Forbearance And Forgiveness**

The Prophet ﷺ had a natural disposition to the qualities of forbearance and forgiveness, qualities he showed even when he was able to exact retribution. The following saying is found in *Sahih Al-Bukhari* (10:524): “The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ never sought retribution for himself; but when Allâh’s boundaries were transgressed, then he would seek retribution for Allâh.”

The occasions in which the Prophet’s noble quality of forgiveness comes to light are indeed many and are not paralleled in history; those instances are found in books of Hadith and of the Prophet’s biography.

In a *Hadith* related by Muslim and others from among the eminent compilers of Hadith, eighty men from the inhabitants of Makkah descended upon the Prophet ﷺ and his Companions in full armor. They came from the direction of the Tan'im Mountain, and they wanted to take the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ off guard. Their plot was foiled, however, and they were taken as prisoners. But instead of punishing them, the Prophet ﷺ forgave them, and Allâh Almighty referred to this story in the following verse:

\[\text{And He it is Who has withheld their hands from you and your hands from them in the midst of Makkah, after He had made you victorious over them.} \]

It is also established in the Prophet’s biography that he ﷺ would


forbear the harshness of strangers. Anas, may Allah be pleased with him, said, “I was walking with the Prophet ﷺ, who was wearing a Najrani garment, the hems of which were rough. A desert Arab accosted him, and violently pulled at his garment. I looked at the surface of the Prophet’s shoulder and I saw that the hems of the garment harmed his skin from the severity of the man’s pulling. Then the desert Arab said, ‘O Muhammad, order for me from Allah’s wealth that is with you.’ The Prophet ﷺ turned to him, laughed, and ordered for him to be given (a share of wealth).”[1]

His Generosity
In giving to good causes, the Prophet’s hands were extended; he would spend the wealth Allah Almighty gave to him in order to elevate Allah’s Word.

Ibn ‘Abbas, may Allah be pleased with them, said, “The Prophet ﷺ was the most generous from among the people, and he was most generous during Ramadhan, when Jibril, peace be upon him, would meet him. Jibril would meet him every night during Ramadhan and study the Qur’an with him. The Messenger of Allah ﷺ was more generous with good than the free wind.”[2]

His Bravery
He ﷺ added bravery and composure to the quality of generosity; ‘Ali, may Allah be pleased with him, said, “When the fighting would become most violent and intense, we would shield ourselves with the Prophet ﷺ: there would be no one closer to the enemy than him ﷺ.”[3]

The caller to truth, especially one commissioned with the task of conveying it, must be brave and composed in proportion to the level of stubbornness and harshness of those whom he calls, and in proportion to the greatness of the truth that he is calling to, and how it goes against the norms and desires of society and against their preconceived beliefs.

[1] Recorded by Al-Bukhari (in Fatb Al-Bari: 10:75) and by Muslim (2:730), and narrated by Anas, may Allah be pleased with him.
[2] Al-Bukhari
Considering that Allâh Almighty granted bravery and serenity to the heart of Muhammad ﷺ in difficult times, one should not be surprised that the Prophet ﷺ had the greatest share of those qualities, for none were more obstinate in their ways than the Arabs, who were the first to be invited by the Prophet ﷺ. Islam signified an end to their false beliefs; moreover it disparaged their objects of worship. Islam also nullified much of their habits, habits that were contrary to Allâh’s Shari’ah, for Islam took them away from their desires, so that they could follow the truth and apply it.

The Prophet’s Haya’ (Modesty)

Imam An-Nawawi relates that the scholars define Haya’ as, “A manner that impels one to abandon that which is lewd and disgusting and prevents one from being negligent in the rights of others.”[1]

The Prophet ﷺ was naturally inclined to modesty; the Prophet ﷺ informed us that it is from the manners of Islam, when he ﷺ said:

«لكل دين خلوق، وخلق الإسلام الحياء»

Every religion has a character, and the character of Islam is Haya’ (modesty).[2]

In a Hadith related by ‘Imran bin Husain, the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said:

«الحياء لا يأتي إلا يحيى»

Al-Haya’ can only result in good.[3]

[1] Riyadhu-Salihin, Imam An-Nawawi; the chapter on “Haya’.”
[2] Recorded by Malik in Al-Muwatta’: (2:905); from Zaid bin Talib bin Rukanah from the Prophet ﷺ which is a Mursal chain (disconnected at the last chain). Ibn Majah related it in As-Sunan (2:1399) from Mu’awiyah bin Yahya, from Az-Zuhri, from Anas, from the Prophet ﷺ, with the wording, “Indeed to every religion is a character...” Yet the scholars of Hadith have said that Mu’awiyah bin Yahya As-Sudfi is weak. Ibn Majah related it from another route, from Muhammad bin Sa’id Al-Warraq, from Salih bin Hayyan, from Muhammad bin Ka‘b Al-Qurazi, from Ibn ‘Abbas, from the Prophet ﷺ, with the same wording as in the narration of Anas, may Allâh be pleased with him. But Muhammad bin Sa’id Al-Warraq and Salih bin Hayyan are both weak. And Allâh Almighty knows best.

[3] Al-Bukhari and Muslim
One of the results of having this noble characteristic is that the Prophet ﷺ would not outright say something in the face of another that would cause him harm, so if someone deserved to be scolded, the Prophet ﷺ would advise everyone, without mentioning that person’s name. He would generalize, for instance, saying:

ما بال أن أوامر يشرطون مروطاً ليس به كتاب الله

What is wrong with people who stipulate conditions that are not found in Allâh’s Book! [1]

Allâh Almighty Blessed Him With Dignity And Made The Hearts Of People Hold Him In Awe

In spite of the Prophet’s humbleness, gentleness, mercy, forbearance, and modesty, he would fill the hearts of people with veneration and awe. With a description of his gathering, it has been related that when he ﷺ would speak, his listeners would bow down their heads (listening attentively and silently) as if there were birds perched on their heads.

Only when he ﷺ would finish his talk would they begin to speak.

Whenever he ﷺ would speak to them, they would remain quiet, listening to him until he finished:

أقد كن لكم في رسول الله أسوة حسنة

Indeed in the Messenger of Allâh you have a good example to follow... [2]

This verse, although it consists of few words, yet it carries many deep, penetrating meanings. In this verse, you are being guided to follow the way of the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ. It also alludes to the fact that, from the creation, Muhammad ﷺ has the most upright character and way: from the creation, he is most noble in behavior, best in speech, and most superior in deeds.

What Sunnah To Follow In Terms Of His Actions

If we were to contemplate his noble qualities and praiseworthy

---

[1] Al-Bukhari and Muslim; the former related it in Al-Manaqib and the latter’s narration can be found in (3:1142); the Hadith is related by ‘Aishah.

[2] (Al-Ahzab 33:21)
actions, we would find that they are of two categories:

Regarding the first category, we are not ordered to follow him, either because it is a matter in which we have no choice because it is a blessing from the Creator, such as his handsome face, his noble lineage, his eloquent speech – or because it is from those matters that are specific to the Prophet – for example, him being allowed to have nine wives at one time – or because it is a matter that has to do with habits and inclinations, matters in which we can perceive no order, command, or legislation – such as the way he sat or stood on certain occasions, his preference for certain kinds of foods, his dislike for other kinds of foods – for he refused to eat a lizard when it was presented to him, while he also said:

«لَيْسَ ِٖۖفِحْرَامٖ،َ وَلَكِنْ ۖلَمْ يُكْنِ ۠بَأَرَضٖ ۚۖفُؤْدَيْيِ ۚۗفَأَجْدُحُي ۚۖأُعَافِيَ»

It is not forbidden, but it is not from the food of the land of my people, so I find myself repulsed by it.[1]

From the Prophet’s actions that are from the above category, though following him in certain cases may be permissible, doing so is not prescribed, and does not fall under the general meaning of this verse:

«لَقَدْ ۖكَانَ ۖلَكُمْ فِى ۝رَسُولِ ۢمُحَدِّثَ أَسْوَىٖ ۚۖحَسْنَةٖ»

Indeed in the Messenger of Allah you have a good example to follow.[2]

This verse orders us to follow the Messenger of Allah in situations and actions that are related to choice, not in matters wherein habits are concerned. We also must follow the Prophet in all other matters, unless there is a clear proof indicating that that matter is from those rulings that are specific for him.

We must follow the Prophet in those actions of worship that he performed, seeking closeness to Allah.

Therefore, this requires that we research those acts of worship that

[1] Al-Bukhari, the Book of Food, chapter nos. 10 and 14, and in the Book of Slaughtering, chapter no 33; Muslim (3:1533), in a Hadith related by Ibn ‘Abbas, may Allah be pleased with them.

[2] (Al-Ahzab 33:21)
he would perform, seeking closeness to the Creator – acts such as the prayer, fasting, Ḥajj, remembrance, and we must also consider the way in which those acts were performed, their times, and the extent to which the Prophet ﷺ strived to perform them.

By searching out for those matters and actions, a Muslim protects himself from perpetrating acts of innovation, from performing acts of worship during times when they are not legislated, or from becoming extravagant in the religion.

Innovations only crept into the religion at the hands of those who did not study the biography and Sunnah of the Prophet ﷺ; or at least they did not study it in a way that allowed them to distinguish between false acts of worship and correct ones.

Examples Of When The Messenger of Allah ﷺ Is To Be Followed

We must follow the Prophet’s attitude and forbearance in dealing with the struggles of life; also, in the patience he displayed, patience that, without shaking itself, would shake firm mountains.

The upright believers from the early and later generations of Islam followed him regarding the above-mentioned qualities. When faced with calamity - such as loss of wealth or the death of one’s child, they were examples of patience and resolution.

When the Prophet ﷺ called others to the truth, he ﷺ had to face resistance, stubbornness, and scorn, yet he ﷺ was patient, and so should we be when calling others to Islam.

Despite having such harms inflicted upon him by the polytheists of Makkah, the Prophet’s determination did not diminish in the least.

A broken tooth, fracture, and injury on his lower lip – these were the Prophet’s injuries during the Battle of Uhud; with his injuries, he prayed Zuhr in a seated position, and on the next day he called out when setting out to search for the enemies, saying:

لا يخرج معاها إلا أحد حضر بالآمم

No one may accompany us except he who attended (the battle) yesterday.

The study of these aspects of the Prophet’s biography should serve to elevate the determination and resolution of religious scholars and
callers to the truth, because they will then make Allâh’s pleasure and the victory of truth and virtue to be the goals after which they strive in their lives.

We must follow the Prophet ﷺ in the way he dealt with individuals and groups, for he was gentle and generous when calling them to the truth, to the different paths of doing good, and to the ways that lead to happiness.

The study of these aspects of the Prophet’s biography should open the way for the keen student, so that he learns how to conquer the hearts of people – regardless of whether they are in the higher or lower ranks of society, and regardless of where they are from.

Moreover, one learns how to govern and rectify souls that are prisoners of their desires, by returning them to a pure and virtuous life.

The keen observer will find that when one calls to the truth, one cannot be successful in spreading his message unless he follows the guidance of the Prophet ﷺ, for his dealings serve as a standard, even in his dealings with his opponents or enemies.

We must also follow the Prophet ﷺ in the way he ﷺ would reciprocate harm with forgiveness; he ﷺ would do so even though he was able to inflict harm in return.

Whoever studies this aspect of the Prophet’s biography will be amazed at the number of times he ﷺ displayed the noble quality of forgiveness.

Add to the quality of forgiveness when individually harmed, the quality of firm resolution when one of Allâh’s boundaries was transgressed. ‘Aishah, may Allâh be pleased with her, said, “The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ never took revenge for himself; the only time he would seek retribution is when one of Allâh’s inviolable boundaries was violated.” And in a similar narration, “But when one of Allâh’s forbidden boundaries was transgressed, he would seek retribution for Allâh.”[1] This saying guides Muslims to

---

[1] Al-Bukhari, in the Book of Al-Manaqib, chapter no. 3, Manners, chapter no. 80, Al-Hudood, chapter no. 10. Also related by Muslim (4:1815). The Hadith is narrated by ‘Aishah, may Allâh be pleased with her.
following the Prophet’s way, the way of the best of creation. And this requires from us that we research his Sunnah and his biography, to learn his ways, and moreover, to apply them in our life. While making such a research, the Muslim appreciates the pinnacle of human excellence in the Prophet ﷺ, and by following him in performing good deeds, the Muslim achieves a good life in this world and in the Hereafter.
**Islamic Manners And Characteristics**

**Good Manners**

Thus does Allâh Almighty describe His Prophet, Muhammad ﷺ:

\[\text{وَإِذَّنَّكَ لَمْ تَتَّلِّي عَظِيمًا} \]

And verily, you (O Muhammad ﷺ) are on an exalted standard of character.[1]

The Prophet ﷺ said:

\[\text{أَكْمَلُ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ إِيمَانًا، أَكْمَلُوهُمْ خَلْقًا} \]

The believer with the most complete faith is he who has the best manners.[2]

He also said:

\[\text{إِنَّ الْمُؤْمِنَ إِذَا كَرَؤْنَهُ يَخْشَى عَلَيْهِ ذَرَّةً الْعَذَابَ الْقَابِلَ} \]

Indeed, through his good manners, the believer reaches the ranking of the one who fasts and stands (in the night for prayer).[3]

**Forbearance, Deliberateness, Gentleness, And Forgiveness**

Allâh Almighty says:

\[\text{وَالْكَسْبِينَ الْمُسْتَفِيقِ وَالْمُعَاَفِينَ عَنِ النَّاسِ} \]

Those who repress anger and who pardon men.[4]

And:

\[\text{حَلُّ النَّفْرِ بَشَرًا بَالْمَنِيرَ وَأَطْعِمَ عَنْ الْمَهْيَاتِ} \]

Show forgiveness, enjoin what is good, and turn away from the foolish.[5]

---

[1] (Al-Qalam 68:4)
[2] At-Tirmithi, who said the Hadith is Hasan Sahib.
[5] (Al-A’raf 7:199)
Let them pardon and forgive. Do you not love that Allâh should forgive you? [1]

The Prophet ﷺ said to the head of the delegation of ‘Abdul-Qais:

«إِنَّ فِيكُمْ خَصَائِصَاتٌ يُجْبِيُّهُمَا اللَّهُ: الْجَلَّالُ وَالْقِيَامَةُ»

Indeed, in you are two qualities that Allâh loves: forbearance and deliberateness.[2]

And in another Hadith, he ﷺ said:

«إِنَّمَا يُحْرَمُ الَّذِينَ الْرَّفْقَ، يُحْرَمُ الْخَيْرُ كُلُّهُ»

Whoever is deprived of gentleness is deprived of good in its entirety.[3]

Truthfulness

Allâh Almighty says:

«أَنْتُمْ لَا تَمْتَلِكُونَ ثَغْرًا مَّنْ أَلَّهُ يُكْتَبُ عَلَيْهِمَا مَا صَدَقَوْا مَعَ الصَّدِيقِينَ»

O you who believe! Be afraid of Allâh, and be with those who are true (in words and deeds).[4]

And the Prophet ﷺ said:

«إِنَّ الصَّدِيقَ يُهْدِي إِلَى الْبَيِّنَةِ، وَإِنَّ أَلَّهَ يُهْدِي إِلَى الْحَقِّ، وَإِنَّ الْرَّجُلَ
ّ لَا يُصَدِّقُ حَتَّى يَكُنَّى بَيْنَ الْمَسْلِمِينَ...»

Indeed, truthfulness leads to righteousness, and righteousness leads to Paradise; and a man continues to speak the truth until he is written with Allâh as a truthful one...[5]

Trusts, Fulfilling Contracts And Treaties, And Being Just Among People

Allâh Almighty says:

[1] (An-Nur 24:22)
[2] Muslim
[3] Muslim
[5] Agreed upon
Verily! Allâh commands that you should render back the trusts to those to whom they are due; and that when you judge between men, you judge with justice.\footnote{(An-Nisa’ 4:58)}

And Allâh Almighty says:

\begin{quote}
 ولا تقربوا ما للبخيل إلا يأتي به حسن حتى يبلغ أحسن وأطيعوا بالله إن العهده كان مستحقاً وفدو الكفل إذا كنكم وذو العقل السليم دافع حرب واتسمت نوراً
\end{quote}

And come not near to the orphan’s property except to improve it, until he attains the age of full strength. And fulfil (every) covenant. Verily! the covenant, will be questioned about. And give full measure when you measure, and weigh with a balance that is straight. That is good (advantageous) and better in the end.\footnote{(Al-Isra’ 17:34,35)}

Allâh Almighty praised the believers, saying:

\begin{quote}
 الذين يؤمنون بالله ولا يعفون سبيله
\end{quote}

Those who fulfill the Covenant of Allâh and break not the Mitbaq (bond, treaty, covenant).\footnote{(Ar-Ra’d 13:20)}

Generosity And Spending One’s Wealth For Good Causes

Allâh Almighty says:

\begin{quote}
 وما نشفعوا من خير إلا خير وما نصفعون إلا بTênيكء وتجول الله وما نشفعوا من خير إلا خير وما نصفعون إلا بTênيكء والتسمم وأتمن لا تظلمون
\end{quote}

And whatever you spend in good, it is for yourselves, when you spend not except seeking Allâh’s Face. And whatever you spend in good, it will be repaid to you in full, and you shall not
be wronged. [1]

And Allâh Almighty praised the believers, saying:


And they give food, in spite of their love for it (or for the love of Him), to the Miskin (needy), the orphan, and the captive,[2]

The way of one who follows the Prophet ﷺ in his generosity is such that he spends any wealth he has remaining with him for a good cause. One of the Prophet’s Companions, Jabir, may Allâh be pleased with him, said, “It never happened that the Prophet ﷺ was asked and his reply was ‘no.’” The Prophet ﷺ especially encouraged us to honor and show generosity to our guest, when he ﷺ said:


Whoever believes in Allâh and the Last Day, then let him honor his guest.[3]

Patience

Allâh Almighty says:


And give glad tidings to As-Sabrin (the patient ones, etc.).[4]

And:


Only those who are patient shall receive their rewards in full, without reckoning.[5]

The Prophet ﷺ said:


Patience is illumination.[6]

[1] (Al-Baqarah 2:272)
[2] (Al-Insan 76:8)
[6] Muslim
And he ﷺ said,

وَمَنْ يَتَصَرَّفُ بِصَبْرِهِ اللَّهُ، وَمَا أَعْطَى أَحْدَ عَطَاءَ حُبْرًا وَأَوْسَعَ مِنَ الصَّبْرِ

Whoever strives to be patient, Allâh makes him become patient, and no one was granted a better and more spacious favor than patience.[1]

Allâh Almighty says:

وَلْقَلِّبْ جَانَاحَكَ إِلَىَّ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ

And lower your wings for the believers (be courteous to the fellow-believers).[2]

In another Hadith, the Prophet ﷺ said:

إِنَّ اللَّهَ أُوْحِيَ إِلَيْيَ أنْ نَوَاضِعَوا حَتَّى لا يَبْقَ أَحْدُ عَلَى أَحْدِعُ، وَلَا يَبْعِيَ أَحْدُ عَلَى أَحْدِعُ

Indeed, Allâh has inspired me that you should be humble toward one another until not one of you is proud over another, and not one of you wrongs another.[3]

In yet another Hadith, the Prophet ﷺ said:

وَمَا نَوَاضَعَ أَحْدَ اللَّهِ إِلَّا رَفَعَهُ

No one behaves humbly for Allâh except that He raises him.[4]

The Trust

Allâh Almighty says:

إِنَّ اللَّهَ يُمَرِّضُ آمِنًا نَوَاضَعَ أَحْدَ اللَّهِ أَلْهَهُ إِلَى أَهْلِهِ وَأَيُّهَا مَكْرُورُ بِيْنَ الْأَمْمِ أَنْ تَفْعَكُوا بِالْمَكْرَ

Verily! Allâh commands that you should render back the trusts to those to whom they are due; and that when you judge

[1] Al-Bukhari and Muslim
[4] Muslim
between men, you judge with justice.[1]

The Prophet ﷺ said:

"إِذَا حَدَثَ كَذَّبْتُ، وَإِذَا وَعَدْتُ أَخَافْتُ، وَإِذَا أُؤُنِّسْتُ حَانَتُ"

The signs of the hypocrite are three: when he speaks, he lies; when he promises, he breaks his promise; and when he is trusted, he betrays.[2]

**Al-Haya' (Modesty)**

The Messenger of Allah ﷺ said:

"الْحَيَاةُ لَا يَأْتِيَ إِلَّا يَخْبِرُ"

**Al-Haya' brings good only.**[3]

In another Hadith, he ﷺ said:

"وَالْحَيَاةُ سَعْبَةَ مِنْ الإِيمَانِ"

**Al-Haya' is one of the branches of faith.**[4]

**Good Speech And A Smiling Face**

Allah Almighty says:

"وَلَوْ كَتَبْنَ أَطْيَقًا عَلَى الْقَلْبِ لَأَفْضَوْلَ مِنْ حَكْمَةٍ"

And had you been severe and harsh hearted, they would have broken away from you.[5]

The Prophet ﷺ said:

"أَفِدْنَا النَّارَ وَلَوْ بَيْنَ مَثْرَةٍ، فَمَنْ لَمْ يَجِدْ فَقَطَةً طَيْبَةً"

Protect yourself from the Fire, even if it is with part of a date. And whosoever cannot find (even that), then with a good word.[6]

---

[1] (An-Visa' 4:58)
[2] Agreed upon
[3] Agreed upon
[4] Agreed upon
[5] (Aal 'Imran 3:159)
[6] Agreed upon
He also said:

»وَالْكَلِمَةُ الْعَلِيمَةَ صَدَقَةً«

The good word is charity.[1]

Dutifulness To Parents And Joining Ties With Relations

Allāh Almighty says:

»وَقَضَى رَبِّكَ أَلَّا تَعْبَرَا إِلَّا إِبَاتِيَ وَإِرَادَتِي إِلَّا إِنَّا بِمَعْنَى عَدَدٍۢ الْحَسَبِ أَحِدَّهُما أو كَأَحَدَهُما فَلَا تَثْبِتَ فَمَا أَيْنَ وَلَا تَنْزِلَنَّ وَلَوْ لَمْ يَوْلِي صَحْبَثًا وَلَا حُضُورًا لَّمْ يَوْلِي صَحْبَاتَهُمَا كَذَا رَبِّي صَفِيرًا«

And your Lord has decreed that you worship none but Him. And that you be dutiful to your parents. If one of them or both of them attain old age in your life, say not to them a word of disrespect, nor shout at them but address them in terms of honor. And lower unto them the wing of submission and humility through mercy, and say: "My Lord! Bestow on them Your Mercy as they did bring me up when I was small."[2]

Ibn Mas'ud, said, “I asked the Prophet ﷺ, which deed is most beloved to Allāh Almighty? He ﷺ said:

»الْصَّلَاةَ عَلَى وُفْقِهَا«

‘Prayer in its time.’

I asked, ‘Then what?’ He ﷺ said:

»يرَبِّ الْوَالِدَيْنِ«

‘Being dutiful to one’s parents....’[3]

The Prophet ﷺ also said:

»مَنْ أَحْبَبَ أَنْ يَبْسُطَ لَهُ فِي رَزْقِهِ فَيَسْتَنَبْ لَهُ فِي أَرْزُقِهِ فِي يَدِ رَحْمَتِ رَحْمَتِهِ«

Whoever loves that his sustenance should be made abundant

---

[1] Agreed upon
[3] Agreed upon
and that his life should be prolonged, then let him join ties with his relations.\footnote{Agreed upon}

Honoring the sacredness of Muslims, showing mercy and compassion to them, mutually advising one another to what is good and right, cooperating in piety and righteousness, forgiving others, spending generously for good causes, turning away from the ignorant ones, forbearing hardship, avoiding what may be permissible from the fear that it might lead to the unlawful, leaving doubtful matters, attending to the rights of one's neighbors, fulfilling the needs of Muslims, making peace between people, being gentle and kind to orphans and to the weak, overlooking the faults of other Muslims, being dignified and calm, being virtuous, fulfilling the trust and promise, showing leniency when buying and selling, preferring others over one's own self. These are only some of the many noble and good qualities of the believer, qualities that Allâh Almighty praised, qualities that the Prophet ﷺ is described with, and qualities which he ﷺ came to complete.

\textit{Ihsan: Doing Deeds In A Good Manner}\footnote{From the book \textit{Daleelul-Muslim}.}

The religion of Islam orders us to do things well, in all of our deeds: those apparent and those hidden. The Arabic word that corresponds to the meaning of doing things well is \textit{Ihsan}. \textit{Ihsan} in worship means that we should purify all of our worship, making it pure for Allâh, and purifying it from \textit{Shirk}, which nullifies worship. We are also ordered to perform \textit{Ihsan} to orphans, the poor, and the needy, which means that we should console them, show compassion to them, bring happiness to them, and perform our duty to them by giving wealth to them as much as we are able. \textit{Ihsan} toward mankind in general means to work to further their state of well-being, both when it relates to this world and the next. \textit{Ihsan} to animals means that we should be gentle with them, not making them carry more than they can bear; it also means that we should generously maintain those animals that are under our care. In general terms, \textit{Ihsan} toward other Muslims means that we should love for good things to happen to them in all circumstances; to strive so that good things happen to Muslims indeed leads to a high rank and status in Islam—
it indicates that one has reached a very high level of manners.

Enjoining Good And Forbidding Evil

Enjoining good and forbidding evil is one of the greatest symbols and the strongest of foundations in Islam. Upon it stands the society and the individual. Allāh Almighty says:

كُنُّوا خيرًا لَّدَيْنَا أَخْرِجُوا بِالْبَيِّنَاتِ وَالْبَيِّنَاتِ عَنَّ النَّصُوْبِ وَلْيُؤْمِنُوا بِالله وَلَوْ مَاتَ أُمَّتُكُمْ أَحْلَ السَّمَاعِ لَكُنَّ خَيرًا لَّهُمْ مِنْهُمْ فَمِنْهُمْ الْمُؤْمِنُونَ وَأَكْثَرُهُمْ الْقَسَاءُونَ

You are the best of peoples ever raised up for mankind; you enjoin Al-Ma’ruf (i.e., Islamic Monotheism and all that Islam has ordained) and forbid Al-Munkar (polytheism, disbelief and all that Islam has forbidden), and you believe in Allāh. And had the People of the Scripture (Jews and Christians) believed, it would have been better for them; among them are some who have faith, but most of them are Al-Fasiqun (disobedient to Allāh – and rebellious against Allāh’s Command).[1]

Allāh Almighty describes the Muslims thus – as the highest and most advanced society, because of the noble characteristics and high manners that they are adorned with, not to mention their truthful fervor to safeguard and honor the truth. The righteous and guided society is that society whose individuals work together to promote the truth, combining their efforts to ward off evil, to banish the wicked, to hold the foolish one accountable for his deeds. Allāh Almighty says:

وَلَتَكُنْنَا نَيَقِيمُونَ إِلَى الْخَيْرِ وَنَأْمَرُونَ بِالْبَيِّنَاتِ وَنَيَهُوَنَ عَنَّ النَّصُوْبِ

Let there arise out of you a group of people inviting to all that is good (Islam), enjoining Al-Ma’ruf (i.e., Islamic Monotheism and all that Islam orders one to do) and forbidding Al-Munkar (polytheism and disbelief and all that Islam has forbidden). And it is they who are the successful.[2]

Meanwhile, Allâh Almighty reproached the society in which evil is rampant, in which wicked deeds are the norm – a society that boasts the most ridiculous of customs. Their zeal to protect the true religion is dead; of them, Allâh Almighty says:

\[
\text{"لِعَسِيَونَ صَفَحَوْا مِنْ نَبِيٍّ إِلَى نَبِيٍّ عَلَى لِسانِ دَاوُودَ وَجِبَالِيَ أَبِي}
\text{مُرْسَأٍ ذَلِكَ بِمَا عَمِّضُوا وَيَسْتَمَعُونَنَّ عَنْ مُعَامَكَرٍ طَالِئٍ لَّتَسْتَمَعُونَ مِنْهُ.} \]

Those among the Children of Israel who disbelieved were cursed by the tongue of Dawud and 'Iesa son of Maryam. That was because they disobeyed and were ever transgressing beyond bounds. They used not to forbid one another from the 

\text{Munkar (wrong, evildoing, sins, polytheism, disbelief, etc.)}

which they committed. Vile indeed was what they used to do.[1]

---

[1] (Al-Ma'idah 5:78,79)
The Lawful

To make sure that your supplications are answered, eat and drink from only that which is lawful.

The Rights Of Brotherhood

Abu Hurairah, may Allâh be pleased with him, related the following saying of the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ:

"Guard against assumptions, for verily assumptions are the greatest forms of lying in speech. Do not try to seek information about the faults of others; do not spy on others to seek out their faults; do not compete with one another (in boasting worldly achievements); do not be jealous of one another; do not plot against one another; and be Allâh's worshippers, brothers unto one another as He ordered you.

The Muslim is the brother of a Muslim: he does not wrong him, forsake him, or look down upon him. Al-Taqwa (piety and righteousness) is indeed here; Al-Taqwa is indeed here (As he said this, he pointed to his chest). It is sufficient evil for one to look down upon his brother Muslim. All of the Muslim is sacred to the Muslim: his blood, honor, and wealth. Indeed, Allâh does not look at your bodies or your appearances; rather, He looks at your hearts and deeds.

In another narration:

لا تُخَاضِدُوا، ولا تُبَاعِضُوا، ولا تُخَشَّسُوا، ولا تُخَشَّسُوا، ولا
Do not be jealous of one another; do not hate one another; do not spy on one another, do not seek to find out the faults of one another; do not deceitfully outbid one another; and be Allâh’s worshippers and brothers unto one another.

In another narration:

لا تناجِشوا وَلا تـَعْبَضوا وَلا تُناكِسوا وَلا تُحَاجِرْوا وَكُونُوا عِبـَادَ اللَّهِ إِخْوَانًا

Do not cut off ties with one another, do not plot against one another, do not hate one another, do not be jealous of one another, and be Allâh’s worshippers and brothers unto one another.

And in yet another narration:

وَلَا تَهَاجِرْوا وَلَا تَعْبَضَكُمْ عَلَى بَعْضٍ بَعْضٍ

Do not desert one another and let not one of you sell over the sale of another.[1]
The Youth And Islamic Manners

Manners for Dealing With Others:[1]

1) Use expressions that portray good manners when talking to others, expressions such as the following:
   - “Athaabakallâh (May Allâh reward you).”
   - “Baarakallâhu Feek (May Allâh bless you).”
   - “Hc.fidbakallâh (May Allâh protect you).”
   - ‘Jazaakallâhu Khairan (May Allâh reward you well).”
   - “Afwan (Pardon).”

2) Address your elders, showing reverence; for example, saying, “O my uncle,”

3) If someone is of a similar age to yours, address him respectfully, saying, “My brother,” or using any other name that is most pleasing to him.

4) When dealing with others and especially upon meeting them, share your smiling face with them.

5) Train yourself to be patient, forgiving, and to abandon the pursuit of revenge, especially when you are able to exact revenge.

6) Respect those who practice a trade and those whose jobs are generally looked down upon as being menial.

7) If you deal with servants or other employees, treat them in a dignified and good way.

8) On Islamic holidays, congratulate others, supplicating for the Muslims to see that holiday again the next year.

9) Make it a habit of yours to be organized and disciplined, especially when making promises to others; and show others your good manners.

10) Do not keep company with those who are wicked.

11) Help your elders and those who need help, and show mercy to the young.

---

The Islamic Greeting ("As-Salaam": Greetings Of Peace)

Islamic manners regarding greetings are as follows:

1) The "Salaam" should precede all other speech; say, "As-Salaamu Alaikum wa Rabmatullâbi wa Barakaatubu (May the peace, mercy, and blessings of Allâh be upon you)."

2) Answer this greeting, for answering the Salaam of one who initiates the greeting is compulsory, saying, "Wa 'Alaikumus-Salaam wa Rabmatullâbi wa Barakaatubu (And upon you the peace, mercy, and blessings of Allâh)."

3) Greet all Muslims in the said manner, regardless of whether you know them or not.

4) When you wish to leave the company of an individual or of a group, say, "As-Salaamu 'Alaikum."

5) The younger one should initiate the greeting with his elder; the one who is riding should initiate the greeting with the one who is walking; and the one who is walking should initiate the greeting with one who is standing.

6) Greet every Muslim you meet at work, at school, or in the street with the said Islamic greeting, for that is the greeting of the Muslims.

The Rights Of Parents

How I become dutiful to my parents:

1) I initiate the Islamic greeting with them, so if I enter a room that they are in, I say, "As-Salaamu 'Alaikum wa Rabmatullâbi wa Barakaatubu."

2) Before entering a room whose door is shut, I seek their permission first by knocking, saying, "As-Salaamu 'Alaikum; may I enter?"

3) Before leaving the home, I first seek their permission. I don't leave unless I have permission to leave.

4) I address my parents in a gentle manner, and I never raise my voice when speaking to them.

5) Whenever I come home with my parents, I let them enter first. And whenever I leave with them, I let them exit the house first.
6) I obey my mother and father’s orders, and I listen attentively to them when they speak to me.

7) I do not call them by their names; rather, I say, “My father,” or “My mother.”

8) I do not begin to eat or drink before they do.

**Some Of The Favors That Your Parents Have Done For You**

Their favors are many, but here are a few:

1) Your mother carried you in her abdomen for nine months, after which she experienced great pain to give birth to you.

2) Your mother fed you from her milk; she would wash you and clean away your urine and feces.

3) Your father spent his money to raise you, giving you what you wanted in terms of food, drink, clothing, and toys.

4) Both your mother and father strove to keep you in good health.

5) Your mother stayed up nights when you were sick.

6) Your father and mother sent you to a school so that you could learn, so that you could become a righteous individual – one who worships Allâh Almighty based upon sound knowledge – and so that you can become able to earn sustenance in Islamically legislated ways.

**Manners When Dealing With One’s Neighbors**

1) Make it a habit to deal in a good way with your neighbor’s children; seek friendship with those of your neighbor’s children who are righteous, and avoid wronging them, whether it is with speech or deed.

2) Never damage or harm any of your neighbor’s possessions – for example, his car or lights.

3) Do not disturb them with screaming, with a loud voice, with a radio or tape-recorder.

4) Do not play with a ball in the house (or apartment) if doing so disturbs your neighbors or results in the destruction of furniture.

5) Don’t place garbage in front of your neighbor’s house.

6) Visit your neighbors and participate with them in both festive and sad occasions.
7) Visit your neighbors when they are sick: comfort them and supplicate for them.

8) Do not spy, seeking to find out your neighbor’s secrets; even if you happen to find out one of their secrets, reveal them to no one.

9) Do not look into your neighbor’s house or the house of anyone nearby by standing on the roof or by looking through your windows.

**Manners Related To Looking After Specific And General Property**

By specific property, I mean possessions such as your car, books, your family’s wealth, as well as the property of others, such as your neighbor’s car or one of your friend’s possessions.

By general property, I refer to parks, streets, schools, streetlight poles, payphones, *Masjids*, and so on.

**Manners Related To Looking After Specific Property:**

1) Do not tear, destroy, or mutilate your books.

2) Do not be negligent in the upkeep of your books. When reading a book, do not bend it.

3) Take special care to maintain those books that contain the remembrance of Allâh Almighty, and in no way whatsoever should you debase such books.

4) Take care of your toys; don’t break them and don’t deal with them in such a way as may cause them to break or to become ruined; nor should you lend them to one who is likely to break them.

5) Take care of your clothes; don’t tear them or make them dirty, nor should you play with your clothes in a manner that may cause damage to them. Do not write on them, and do not sit on dirty places.

**Manners Related To Looking After General Property:**

1) Do not write on walls – not in your home, in school, in class, in the *Masjid*, in a park, or on the side of a road.

2) Do not harm trees in your garden, in the street, or in the park.
3) Help maintain trees by watering them, or by trimming them, making them look beautiful.

4) Always return lost property to the rightful owner.

5) Help maintain public possessions, such as the payphone and the streetlight post.

6) Be gentle with animals and birds; do not harm them or their homes in any way, and do not take their young ones from them. Furthermore, do not hunt animals unless you do so for food.

7) Help maintain a decent level of cleanliness in public places, such as schools, streets, parks, and Masjids.

8) Always throw your garbage in garbage cans or the like, and not onto the road, sidewalk, or grass.

Manners Regarding Food And Drink

1) Say, “Bismillah (In the Name of Allâh)” before eating and drinking.

2) Sit in an upright position when eating.

3) Eat that which is closest to you.

4) Say, “Al-Hamdullilâh (All praise and thanks are for Allâh),” after finishing a meal.

5) Treat food in a dignified way and do not find fault with food that is served to you.

6) Stay away from harmful foods.

7) Preserve food in clean places.

8) While others are eating, do not stare at them.

9) Do not make any movements that might cause others to become disgusted, such as speaking with your mouth full with food.

10) Share your food with a companion who has no food with him.

11) Do not completely fill yourselves: one-third for breathing, one-third for drinking, and one-third for eating.

12) Do not drink from the mouth of large containers, faucets, or coolers.

13) Do not take paper that has writing on it and then use it as a tablecloth, for it may contain honored writing, such as the
remembrance of Allâh Almighty, verses of the Qur'ân, or sayings of the Prophet 

14) When drinking from a container, do not breathe into it.
15) Take small morsels when eating.
16) Wash your hands before eating.
17) Eat with your right hand.
18) With water and soap, wash your hands and mouth after eating.

**Manners That Relate To Cleanliness**

1) Take showers, especially on Fridays before the *jumu'ah* prayer.
2) Wash your hands and mouth both before and after partaking of a meal.
3) Use *sivak* and use a toothbrush.
4) Clip your nails on a regular basis.
5) Cut your hair and wash it frequently.
6) Maintain your clothes and wash them.
7) Take care of your dress clothing, taking it off at home, instead wearing something casual.
8) Do not take a shower in a flood, a dirty pond, or in a swamp.
9) Do not use other people's toothbrushes or towels.
10) When you are sneezing or if you have a cold, use a tissue or something similar, and place your hand over your mouth when you yawn.
11) Avoid blowing your noise or spitting in front of others.
12) Use washrooms properly, helping to keep them clean.
13) Do not write on the wall, on a chair, on a table, or on your body.
14) Do not waste water or electricity.
15) Always throw garbage into the place allotted for it.
16) Do not urinate in a standing position.
17) Do not play with your mouth or nose in front of others.
18) Use water and tissues to clean your mouth and nose.

**Manners Related To Relieving Yourself**

1) When you enter the washroom, let your left leg proceed,
because it is a filthy place (and because the right side is honored in Islam).

2) Before entering a place to relieve yourself, say, “In the Name of Allâh. O Allâh, I take refuge with You from all evil and evildoers.”

3) As you are relieving yourself, do not speak and make sure that no one can see your private parts.

4) After you have finished urinating or defecating, purify yourself with water.

5) When you leave the washroom, let your right leg precede, saying, “I ask You (O Allâh) for forgiveness.”

6) After purifying yourself from waste matter, wash your hands using soap.

**Manners Related To Joking**

1) Do not go to the extreme of joking too often.

2) Avoid using gestures or speech in an insulting or obscene manner.

3) Avoid joking with someone who doesn’t appreciate your jokes, or merely doesn’t want to participate in them.

4) While you are joking, do not utter a lie.

5) Just to get a laugh, do not make fun of others, mentioning their faults.

6) Avoid joking in the classroom, in the Masjid, or with your elders.

7) Abstain from joking if that is demanded of you.

8) In joking, follow the guidance of the Prophet ﷺ.

9) Be wary of what results from insulting jokes – for example, hatred, rancor, and enmity.

**Manners Related To Participating In A Gathering**

1) Both when entering and when leaving a gathering, you should give the Islamic greeting (i.e., Salaam).

2) Make space for others, and do not be the cause of another sitting uncomfortably.

3) Smile in the faces of those who are present.

4) Do not raise your voice in a manner that may annoy or harm
others.
5) Sit in a respectful manner, and do not sit in places that are either explicitly or implicitly reserved for elders.
6) Abstain from cutting others off while they are talking; rather, wait until they complete their speech.
7) Do not allow for your gathering to be void of the remembrance of Allâh Almighty and blessings upon the Prophet ﷺ.
8) Sit in beneficial and good gatherings, avoiding evil ones.
9) In a gathering, avoid making those movements that may annoy others or disgust them.
10) If the gathering is in a private home, for instance, do not go through the private possessions of the owner, unless he first gives you permission.
11) As a gathering breaks up, make the supplication for expiation of sins.

Manners Of The Tongue
1) Always speak the truth and abstain from lying.
2) Always speak good, honorable, and permissible words, avoiding obscene and lewd speech.
3) Use your tongue to frequently remember Allâh Almighty.
4) Do not speak of the faults of others.
5) Abstain from backbiting and spreading rumors from one person to another with the intention of sowing dissension among them.
6) Do not use your tongue to disparage or mock others.

Manners That Relate To Clothing
1) Wear clean clothes and always maintain their cleanliness.
2) First, avoid wearing strange attire, attire that no one else wears, and attire that makes you stand out. Second, if you are a man, avoid wearing clothing that is specific to women, and vice versa.
3) Be careful not to copy non-Muslims in their attire.
4) Do not overburden your father by demanding expensive clothing.
5) Do not be extravagant when buying clothes; after you have bought what is necessary at a reasonable price, give what remains to charity.

6) Take care of your clothes; do not allow for rips or tears to occur.

7) On all occasions – but especially when playing sports, when swimming, or when changing your clothes – make sure that all of your body parts that must be covered Islamically are indeed covered.

8) When putting on attire or shoes, make the appropriate supplication and always begin with your right side; when removing attire or shoes, always begin with your left side.

9) Avoid clothing that contains pictures (pictures of animals or humans) or lewd, inappropriate, and forbidden phrases.

10) Avoid tight, transparent, or short clothing, especially concerning the areas of your body that must be covered Islamically.

11) For males specifically: do not allow for your clothing to fall down below the level of your ankles.

**Daily Life For The Muslim**

1) Wake up early.

2) As you are exiting from a state of sleep, make the appropriate supplications for waking up.

3) Make an effort to observe the *Fajr* prayer and all other obligatory prayers with the congregation in the *Majjid*.

4) Always adhere to those phrases of remembrance that, based on the Sunnah, you should say in the morning and evening.

5) Make an effort to recite the Qur’ân daily.

6) Try to eat breakfast early, and then head to school or work early.

7) Memorize the Qur’ân and perform all obligatory deeds.

8) Spend time with your family, especially during meal times.

9) Help your parents whenever they need help.

10) As long as it is not demanded of you that you disobey Allâh, obey your parents and execute their commands.

11) When playing sports, avoid harming others.

12) Accompany your family whenever they visit relatives.
13) Avoid bad company.

14) Sleep early.

15) Never waste time; rather, find means of spending it productively – for example, fill any free time you may have by reading.

16) Regarding your individual pursuits and goals, first depend upon Allâh, then upon yourself, and not upon others – for instance, for organizing and cleaning your room.
Certain Forbidden Deeds[1]

1. *Shirk*

One who prostrates to other than Allâh Almighty, who supplicates to other than Allâh, who seeks to have a need fulfilled from other than Allâh, who sacrifices a slaughter for other than Allâh, who performs any kind of worship to other than Allâh – one who is guilty of any of the preceding sins has indeed perpetrated *Shirk*, and it makes no difference whether the object of worship is dead or alive, whether it is a grave, a statue, a rock, a tree, an angel, a prophet, a righteous man, an animal, or anything else. Allâh Almighty does not forgive His worshipper for having perpetrated *Shirk* unless he repents and re-enters Islam anew. Allâh Almighty says:

> إنّي لا أعفُّ أن يُّمَرُّ بِالْيَدِ، وَيُعَفُّ مَا مُنِّيَ ذَلِكَ لِمَنْ يَذَّكَّرُ وَمَنْ يَسْتَغْفِرُ إِلَيْهِ
>
> فَلْيَقُولُوا لِلَّهِ إِنَّمَا عَزِيزٌ عَلِيمٌ

Verily, Allâh forgives not that partners should be set up with Him in worship, but He forgives except that (anything else) to whom He pleases, and whoever sets up partners with Allâh in worship, he has indeed invented a tremendous sin.[2]

Therefore the Muslim worships Allâh alone, supplicates to Allâh alone, and submits to Allâh alone.

> فَلَوْلَا أَنْ سَلَاتِي وَعَسْبَةِ وَسَيْفِي وَمَسَاحَةٌ يَدُ رَبِّي الْعَلِيمِينَ
>
> وَلَوْلَا أَنْ أَرَضِيَ ذَانِكَ رَبَّيْنِ

Say: “Verily, my Salat (prayer), my sacrifice, my living, and my dying are for Allâh, the Lord of the ‘Alamin (mankind, jinn and all that exists). He has no partner. And of this I have been commanded, and I am the first of the Muslims.”[3]

Another form of *Shirk* is to believe that Allâh has a wife or child - far, far above is Allâh from any of that, for indeed Allâh Almighty says:

[1] From *Kitâb Doenul-Islam*
[3] (Al-An’am 6:162,163)
Say: “He is Allâh, (the) One. Allâhus-Samad (Allâh – the Self-Sufficient Master, Whom all creatures need, He neither eats nor drinks). He begets not, nor was He begotten. And there is none coequal or comparable unto Him.”[1]

2. Going to Magicians, Soothsayers And Those Who Claim To Know The Unseen

Both fortune-telling and magic are acts of Kâfr (disbelief), and a magician can only truly be a magician when he has ties with the devils and when he worships them instead of Allâh. Therefore the Muslim is not permitted to go to magicians or to ask them for anything, nor is it permitted for the Muslim to believe magicians or fortune-tellers who claim to know the unseen, for example, that such and such incident will occur in the future, regardless of whether they read palms or crystal balls or anything else. Allâh Almighty says:

Say: “None in the heavens and the earth knows the Ghaib (Unseen) except Allâh.”[2]

And:

(He Alone) the All-Knower of the Ghaib (Unseen), and He reveals to none His Ghaib (Unseen). Except to a Messenger (from mankind) whom He has chosen (He informs him of Unseen as much as He likes), and then He makes a band of watching guards (angels) to march before him and behind him.[3]

[1] (Al-Ikhtlas 112:1-4)


3. Oppression And Wrongdoing

Oppression, injustice, wrongdoing – there are many deeds that fall under this category. To wrong oneself falls under this category, and so does wronging others and wronging society. Even wronging one’s enemies falls under this category. Allāh Almighty informed us that He does not like the oppressors (or transgressors). The Messenger of Allāh related that Allāh Almighty said:

"O my worshippers, indeed I have forbidden oppression upon myself and I have made it forbidden among you, so do not oppress (or wrong) one another."[1]

And the Prophet said:

"Aid your brother, be he the wrongdoer or the wronged.”

A man asked, “O Messenger of Allāh, I help him when he is wronged, but if he is a wrongdoer, how can I help him?” He said:

"You prevent or stop him from wrongdoing, and that is indeed (what is meant by) helping him.”[2]

4. Taking a Life, An Act That Allāh Forbade, Except When There Is An Islamic Right

This is one of the greatest of sins; Allāh Almighty promised the one who commits it a severe torment, not to mention a most severe punishment in this world: the murderer is executed, unless the guardians of the murdered forgive him. Allāh Almighty says:

[1] Muslim, along with its explanation (16:132)
Because of that We ordained for the Children of Israel that if anyone killed a person not in retaliation of murder, or (and) to spread mischief in the land – it would be as if he killed all mankind, and if anyone saved a life, it would be as if he saved the life of all mankind. And indeed, there came to them Our Messengers with clear proofs, evidences, and signs, even then after that many of them continued to exceed the limits (e.g., by doing oppression unjustly and exceeding beyond the limits set by Allâh by committing the major sins) in the land!\[1]

And:

\[2\]

And whoever kills a believer intentionally, his recompense is Hell to abide therein, and the wrath and the curse of Allâh are upon him, and a great punishment is prepared for him.\[2\]

5. Transgressing Against Others By Wrongfully Taking Their Wealth

Theft, bribery, usurpation, trickery – regardless of which of the preceding methods one uses to wrongfully take the wealth of others, one is committing a great sin, for Allâh Almighty says:

\[3\]

Cut off (from the wrist joint) the (right) hand of the thief, male or female, as a recompense for that which they committed, a punishment by way of example from Allâh. And Allâh is All-Powerful, All-Wise.\[3\]

And Allâh Almighty says:

\[1\] (Al-Ma’idah 5:32)

\[2\] (An-Nisa’ 4:93)

\[3\] (Al-Ma’idah 5:38)
And eat up not one another’s property unjustly (in any illegal way, e.g., stealing, robbing, deceiving, etc.).[1]

And:

Verily, those who unjustly eat up the property of orphans, they eat up only a fire into their bellies, and they will be burnt in the blazing Fire[2]

Islam wages a fierce war against those who wrongfully take the wealth of others, exacting a severe punishment upon those who transgress Allâh’s set limits in this regard, those who attack the very foundations of peace and safety in an Islamic society.

6. Cheating, Betrayal, And Treachery

All of the above are forbidden, forbidden in all forms of dealings: in buying, selling, making contracts, and so on. They are base qualities that Islam has categorically forbidden, for Allâh Almighty says:

Woe to Al-Mutcjffin [those who give less in measure and weight (decrease the rights of others)]. Those who, when they have to receive by measure from men, demand full measure, And when they have to give by measure or weight to men, give less than due. Think they not that they will be resurrected (for reckoning). On a Great Day. The Day when (all) mankind will stand before the Lord of the ‘Alamin (mankind, jinn and all that exists).[3]

[1] (Al-Baqarah 2:188)
The Prophet ﷺ said:

«من غشنا فليس منا»

Whoever cheats us, then he is not from us.

And Allâh Almighty says:

«إن الله لا يحب من كان حوالاً أثيمًا»

Verily, Allâh does not like anyone who is a betrayer of his trust, and indulges in crime.\(^{[1]}\)

7. Wrongfully Attacking The Honor Of Others

It is strictly forbidden in Islam to attack the honor and dignity of others by cursing them, by backbiting them, by spreading rumors about them, by spying on them, by mocking them, and by any other means.

Islam strives to establish a pure and clean society, a society that is built upon love, brotherhood, and cooperation, which is why it fights so fiercely against those social ills that lead to a breakdown in society and that lead to hatred, enmity, and selfishness. Allâh Almighty says:

«أنتِما أدُّتُما لا تُشْرِكُوا قُوَمٌ حَمَّرُ قُوَمٌ⁷⁷ أن يَكُونُوا خَآضِيًا فِي نَفْسِهِمْ وَلا فِي نَفْسِ الرَّحْمَٰنِ»

Verily, Allâh does not want anyone to curse his own people or to curse a people in order to exalt its own people. And Allâh says:

«تَذَكَّرُوا مِنْ آوَىٰ عَنَّا تَذَكَّرَ»

Remember your Lord at a distance when you are safe.

O you who believe! Let not a group scoff at another group, it may be that the latter are better than the former; nor let (some) women scoff at other women, it may be that the latter are better than the former, nor defame one another, nor insult one another by nicknames. How bad is it, to insult one’s brother after having faith [i.e., to call your Muslim brother (a faithful believer) as: “O sinner”, or “O wicked”, etc.]. And

\(^{[1]}\) (An-Nisa’ 4:107)
whosoever does not repent, then such are indeed wrong-doers. O you who believe! Avoid much suspicions, indeed some suspicions are sins. And spy not, neither backbite one another. Would one of you like to eat the flesh of his dead brother? You would hate it (so hate backbiting). And fear Allâh. Verily, Allâh is the One Who accepts repentance, Most Merciful.\(^1\)

Likewise, Islam wages war against division that is based upon racism or class distinctions: everyone in Islam is equal. The Arab is not superior to the non-Arab and the white man is not superior to the black man, unless one of them is stronger in his religion and piety, and because of these true standards, all compete with one another to perform good deeds. Allâh Almighty says:

\[
\text{إِنَّا أَنْعَمْنَا عَلَى الْمَلَائِكَةِ مَاْ أَنْعَمْنَا عَلَى إِبْرَاهِيمَ وَمَاْ أَنْعَمْنَا عَلَى مُوسَىَّ}
\]

O mankind! We have created you from a male and a female, and made you into nations and tribes, that you may know one another. Verily, the most honorable of you with Allâh is that (believer) who has At-Taqwa [i.e., one of the Muttaqun (pious)]. Verily, Allâh is All-Knowing, All-Aware.\(^2\)

8. Gambling, Drinking Alcohol, And Taking Drugs

Allâh Almighty says:

\[
\text{إِنَّا نَسْتَفْعَحُكُمْ وَإِنَّا نَمْعَنُ نَبْنِي إِسْرَائِيلَ وَأَلْبَسْنَاهُمْ بَيَاتَانَ مَنْ عَمِلَ الْكَفَرَ}
\]

O you who believe! Intoxicants (all kinds of alcoholic drinks), gambling, Al-Ansab, and Al-Azlam (arrows for seeking luck or decision) are an abomination of Shaitan’s (Satan) handiwork. So avoid (strictly all) that (abomination) in order that you may be successful. Shaitan (Satan) wants only to excite enmity and hatred between you with intoxicants (alcoholic drinks) and

\(^1\) (Al-Ins. jurat 49:11,12)

\(^2\) (Al-Ins. jurat 49:13)
gambling, and hinder you from the remembrance of Allâh and from As-Salât (the prayer). So, will you not then abstain?\[^{[1]}\]

9. Eating Dead Flesh (unslaughtered animals), Blood, Pork, And All Filthy Things That Are Harmful To Man; Also, Eating From That Slaughtering That Was Performed For Other Than Allâh

Allâh Almighty says:

\[
فِي أُلَّا أَذَّنَكُمْ مَأَمَّوًى صَنُّوْنَ مِن طَيِّبَتِ مَا رَزْقُكُمْ وَأَنْفُسُكُمْ يَا يَوُهُبُؤُ، إِنَّمَا مَكَامُهُ حِيَائَتُكُمْ وَالْجِنَّ وَلَعْمُ الأَحْزَارِ وَمَا أَحْسَنَ بهُ
\]

O you who believe! Eat of the lawful things that We have provided you with, and be grateful to Allâh, if it is indeed He Whom you worship. He has forbidden you only the Maytah (dead animals), and blood, and the flesh of swine, and that which is slaughtered as a sacrifice for others than Allâh. But if one is forced by necessity without wilful disobedience nor transgressing due limits, then there is no sin on him. Truly, Allâh is Oft-Forgiving, Most Merciful.\[^{[2]}\]

10. Perpetrating Fornication Or Adultery

Fornication is not only forbidden, but it is also from the greatest of sins; it is a wicked sin that has harmful effects on the character of society as a whole. Because of this sin, families are lost, one’s lineage is confused and distorted, and the children who are the result of fornication feel the bitterness of the sin most acutely because of society’s scorn for them when their background is revealed. Allâh Almighty says:

\[
وَلَوْ نُذْرِكُونَ آيَةًٰ إِنِّمَا كَانَ مَجَازَهَا وَسَاءَةَ سَيِّئَةٍ
\]

And come not near to the unlawful sexual intercourse. Verily, it is a Fabisbah [i.e., anything that transgresses its limits (a great sin)], and an evil way (that leads one to Hell unless Allâh forgives him).\[^{[3]}\]

\[^{[1]}\] (Al-Ma‘âdah 5:90,91)
\[^{[2]}\] (Al-Bagarah 2:172,173)
\[^{[3]}\] (Al-Isra’ 17:32)
Fornication causes the spread of destructive sexual diseases as well, diseases that destroy the very roots of society. The Messenger of Allah ﷺ said:

«مَا اتّبَعَ الْفَاحِشَةُ فِي قُوْمٍ فَطَّرْنَا بِهَا إِلَّا فُسَّدُوا فِيهِمُ ِ
الطَّاغِينَ وَالأَمْضَرِينَ الَّذِينَ لَمْ يَكْتُنُوا فِي أَسَاطِيرِهِمُ»

Whenever a most wicked deed spreads among a people until they announce it (or perform it openly), plague and disease spread among them, (plagues and diseases) that were non-existent in the times of those who came before them.¹

That is why Islam ordered that all routes that lead to fornication must be blocked. Muslims are ordered to lower their gazes, for the forbidden look is the beginning of the road that leads to fornication. Women must cover themselves and wear Hijab, so that society is protected from the ill effects of wicked deeds. On the other hand, Islam orders its adherents to marry at an early age; indeed, it promises a great reward for doing that, so that honorable and virtuous families flourish, families that raise the children of today, moulding them so that they become the righteous men of tomorrow.

11. Consuming Riba (Usury and Interest)

Riba is one of the greatest of sins: it destroys the economy and it takes wrongful advantage of those who are in need of money, regardless of whether it is the businessman for his business or the poor man for his basic needs.

Basically, usury occurs (at least in one of its forms) when one person lends money to another person for a set period, stipulating that when that period arrives, the person pays a specific amount more than what was originally loaned. Therefore the one making the loan and those like him take advantage of those who are in need of money, forcing them to live a life of debt. Taking advantage of businessmen, and without incurring any risks in case of losses, the usurer takes a percentage over and above profits received. When the business goes down and the businessman is drowned in debt, the usurer will squash him. But had they been partners, both sharing in

¹ Ibn Majah (2:1332), and its chain is authentic.
profit and loss, one striving with his wealth the other with his business abilities, the wheels of the economy would continue to turn, but this time, for the benefit of all. Allâh Almighty says:

\[
\text{O you who believe! Be afraid of Allâh and give up what remains (due to you) from Riba (usury and interest) (from now onward), if you are (really) believers. And if you do not do it, then take a notice of war from Allâh and His Messenger but if you repent, you shall have your capital sums. Deal not unjustly (by asking more than your capital sums), and you shall not be dealt with unjustly (by receiving less than your capital sums). And if the debtor is in a hard time (has no money), then grant him time till it is easy for him to repay, but if you remit it by way of charity, that is better for you if you did but know.}^{[1]}
\]

12. Miserliness

This sin indicates the wrong kind of individualism: the extreme love of one’s self. The miser hoards his wealth, refusing to give even the compulsory charity to the poor and needy, showing his disdain for society, declining to accept the principles of mutual cooperation and brotherhood, principles that both Allâh and His Messenger ﷺ have ordered us to adopt. Allâh Almighty says:

\[
\text{And let not those who covetously withhold of that which Allâh has bestowed on them of His bounty (wealth) think that it is good for them (and so they do not pay the obligatory Zakat). Nay, it will be worse for them; the things which they}
\]

\[[1] (Al-Baqarah 2:278-280)\]
covetously withheld shall be tied to their necks like a collar on the Day of Resurrection. And to Allâh belongs the heritage of the heavens and the earth; and Allâh is Well-Acquainted with all that you do.\[^{1}\]

13. Lying And Giving False Testimony

The Prophet ﷺ said:

إنَّ الكذب يَبِيَدَيْ إِلَى النُّجُورِ وَإِنَّ النُّجُور يَبِيَدَيْ إِلَى النَّارِ وَلَا يُزَالُ الرَّجُلُ يَبِيَدَيْ وَيَبِيَدُ الكذب حَتَّى يَتَّخَبَ عَنْدَ الله كَذَابًا

Indeed, lying leads to wickedness, and indeed wickedness leads to the Fire. And a man continues to lie and search out for opportunities to lie until he is written with Allâh as a liar.\[^{2}\]

One of the most wicked forms of lying is to give false testimony; the Prophet ﷺ emphasized its evil, warning against its results: He raised his voice, saying to his Companions:

«أَلا أَنْبَشِمْ بِأَثَرِ الكَبَائِرِ، الْسَّرْكِ، الْيَبْلُغُ، وَعَطْفَةَ الْوَالِدَيْنِ.»

Shall I not inform you of the greatest of great sins – associating partners with Allâh and being undutiful to one’s parents.

He was reclining, and then he sat up and said:

«أَلا وَقُولُ الزَّورَ أَلا وَسَهَادَةُ الزَّورِ.»

Verily, and false speech; verily, and false testimony.\[^{3}\]

He continued to repeat it in order to warn his nation not to perpetrate it.

14. Haughtiness, Pride, Arrogance, And Vanity

These are all offensive and hated qualities in the religion of Islam. Allâh informed us that he doesn’t love the arrogant ones, and in terms of their end in the Hereafter, Allâh Almighty says:

عليه في جَهَّالِ مَنْ سَوَى بِلَكِرْفَيْهِمَا

\[^{1}\text{(Aal 'Imran 3:180)}\]
\[^{2}\text{Al-Bukhari and Muslim (4:2013), in a Hadith narrated by Ibn Mas'ud.}\]
\[^{3}\text{Al-Bukhari (3:225)}\]
Is there not in Hell an abode for the arrogant ones?\(^1\)
The arrogant one is hated by Allâh and hated by His creation.

**Repentance From Forbidden Deeds**

Because you will be held accountable for all of your deeds on the Day of Judgement – being rewarded for good and punished for evil – you should stay away from the grave sins and from all other sins. But if you do perpetrate any sin, you should be quick to repent to Allâh Almighty, asking Him for forgiveness and asking for protection from again falling into evil deeds. True repentance requires you to do the following:

1) To desist from the sin that you are repenting from.
2) To feel remorse for having perpetrated that sin.
3) To make a firm resolve not to return to it.

And there is a fourth condition if the sin you perpetrated involves the rights of others:

4) To return that which you wrongfully took to its owner or to seek forgiveness from the one you wronged.

These are the conditions of a true repentance: if they are met, Allâh will forgive you and not punish you for them. The one who repents from a sin is like he who has no sin. Thereafter, you should continue to ask Allâh for forgiveness; indeed, every Muslim should continually ask for forgiveness, for the grave sins he commits and for the small ones. Allâh Almighty says:

\[\text{“I said (to them): ‘Ask forgiveness from your Lord; Verily, He is Oft-Forgiving.’”}\]\(^2\)

When one repents often, he shows one of the characteristics of the true believer; Allâh Almighty says:

\[\text{“فَلَوَّلَ يُعِبَّدُونَ الْدُّنْيَا عَلَى أَنْفُسِهِمْ لَا تَسْتَغْفَرُونَ مِنْ رَبِّهِمْ إِنَّ اللَّهَ يُغْفِرُ}
\[\text{الْذُّنُوبَ جَمِيعًا إِنَّهُ هُوَ الْغَفُورُ الرَّحِيمُ}
\[\text{وَلَبَدِيرًا إِنَّهُ هُوَ الَّذِي يُؤْتِمُ الرَّحْمَٰنَ}
\[\text{فَأُقِلِّبِانَ لَهُمْ مَا كَانُوا فَإِنَّمَا يُحَذِّرُونَ}}\]

\(^{[1]}\) (Az-Zumar 39:60)
\(^{[2]}\) (Nub 71:10)
Say: “O My worshippers who have transgressed against themselves (by committing evil deeds and sins)! Despair not of the mercy of Allāh, verily Allāh forgives all sins. Truly, He is Oft-Forgiving, Most Merciful.” And turn in repentance and in obedience with true faith to your Lord and submit to Him, (in Islam), before the torment comes upon you, then you will not be helped.  

Some of the More Prevalent Sins that Many People Take Lightly

- To deem lawful that which Allāh has forbidden, or to deem forbidden that which Allāh has made permissible.
- To believe that the stars and planets have some kind of effect on the lives of people.
- To believe that certain things benefit, when in fact the Creator did not make them so.
- To believe in evil omens – because you hear or see something, for example, to believe that evil will befall you; that is a form of Shirk.
- Sitting with hypocrites or wicked people, seeking closeness to them or finding comfort in their company.
- Praying without tranquility.
- To make a lot of frivolous, extraneous movements during prayer.
- For the follower to precede the Imam on purpose during any stage of the prayer.
- To come to the Masjid after having eaten onion or garlic or anything else that has a foul odor.
- Without having just cause, for a woman to refuse her husband’s desire to have sexual relations.
- For a woman to request divorce from her husband without a valid Islamic reason.
- A practice known in Arabic as Ath-Thibar, i.e., for a man to say to his wife, “You are to me like my mother,” when he intends to make her forbidden for him; this practice is forbidden based on the Qur’ān, the Sunnah, and ijma’ (consensus).
- To have intercourse with one’s wife during her monthly period.

- To have anal sex.
- For you to be unjust with your wives, treating some better than others.
- To be alone with a strange woman, in other words, a woman who is not a *Mabram* (someone who you can never marry, who is also someone you can be alone with) for you.
- For a man to shake hands with a strange woman (i.e. one who is not a *Mabram*).
- As she leaves her home, for a woman to wear perfume, knowing that she will pass by men.
- For a woman to travel without a *Mabram*.
- For a man to look at a strange woman on purpose.
- For one to feel it is okay when one of his relatives (wives or children) fornicates.
- For one to lie about who his parents really are, or for a man to refuse to acknowledge his true son.
- When one is selling a product, to hide its defects.
- For one to bid on a product, intending to raise its price, but not intending to actually purchase it.
- After the second call to Friday prayer is made, to engage in trade
- To give or take bribes.
- To wrongfully usurp property.
- For you to accept a gift when intercession is required from you.
- To receive full services from an employee without paying him his due.
- To give to some of one’s children more than to the others.
- Without actually being in need, to ask others for money.
- To seek a loan without intending to pay it back.
- To eat or drink that which is forbidden.
- To use gold and silver utensils or dishes and to eat using them.
- To give false testimony.
- To listen to musical instruments.
- Backbiting, which is to say about your brother that which he dislikes.
- To spread false rumors among people, intending to create
dissension between them.
- To look inside the homes of others without their permission.
- When three are present, for two to speak to the exclusion of the third.
- For men to wear gold, regardless of how they wear it.
- For men to let their garments fall down below the level of their
ankles.
- For a woman to wear thin, short, tight, or transparent clothing.
- For a man or a woman to attach false hair to the end of their
natural hair, regardless whether that false hair is human or
otherwise.
- For men to imitate women or vice versa.
- To dye one’s hair black.
- To draw that which has a spirit (man or animal); this includes
prints on clothes, painting on walls, drawing on paper,
sculptures, and so on.
- To lie about one’s dreams.
- Sitting or walking on a grave.
- When you are relieving yourself, for you to not take cover
properly, allowing others to see you.
- To listen to other peoples’ conversations when they dislike you
to do that.
- To deal badly with your neighbor.
- To harm people on purpose in the writing of your will
- Playing dice, a game that relies on chance
- To curse a believer and to curse someone who doesn’t deserve to
be cursed
- To wail loudly when mourning (or to hire people to wail loudly
when someone dies).
- To hit someone on the face; or to stamp someone’s face (this
includes branding the face of an animal).
- Without a valid Islamic reason, to stop talking to a Muslim for
more than three days.

**What should one do immediately upon entering the fold of Islam?**

When someone voiced his desire to enter the fold of Islam, the eminent Shaikh Muhammad bin Ibrahim, may Allah have mercy on him, addressed him and later related what he said to the seeker of truth:

“When I heard what the man said I was very pleased and I congratulated him for this blessing – the blessing of accepting the truth. I praised and thanked Allah Almighty for guiding him to Islam and I gave him glad tidings of what would result from him accepting Islam. I made him understand that his first obligation was to bear witness to the truth – that none has the right to be worshipped but Allah, and that Muhammad is the Messenger of Allah. I told him that he had to absolve himself from every religion that was contrary to the religion of Islam, in terms of beliefs and acts of worship that are performed with speech or action. I continued to explain that he had to apply all obligatory aspects of Islam and that he had to believe that what is permissible is only that which the Shari'ah made permissible, and that which is forbidden is only that which the Shari'ah made forbidden. Then I explained to him the rest of the pillars of Islam, beginning with the prayer, its pillars, its compulsory elements, and its conditions, among which are the greater and minor state of purity; followed by Zakat, fasting, and Hajj. I informed him that circumcision is compulsory and that he had to take a shower upon accepting Islam. Furthermore, I conveyed to him that he had to learn all that was obligatory to learn regarding the religion. After I informed him of everything mentioned above, he bore witness with his tongue to the phrase of Tawhid in front of me.

---

[1] Al-Imam Ibn Abi Al-Izz, may Allah have mercy on him, said in *Sharh Al-Aqeedah Al-Tabawy* (1:23), “Therefore Tawhid is the first matter by which one enters Islam, and the last matter upon which one leaves this world.”

[2] In *Zadul-Ma'ad*, Ibn Al-Qayyim said, “The most correct opinion in this issue is that it is compulsory for both the one who has been in a state of sexual impurity while he was a disbeliever and for the one who was never in a state of sexual impurity.”
saying, ‘I bear witness that none has the right to be worshipped but Allâh, and I bear witness that Muhammad is the Messenger of Allâh, whom Allâh sent to all of mankind.’ The one who wishes to enter the fold of Islam must change his old name if that name carries implications that are contrary to the Shari'ah, such as a name designating him to be a slave to other than Allâh – for example, ‘Abdul-Maseeh, or ‘Abdul-Husain.”[1]

If one wishes to enter the fold of Islam, one must also become circumcised because it is an Islamic obligation; however, one may delay in informing him of that obligation until Islam becomes more strong and stable in his heart.

The Permanent Committee for Scientific Researches and Religious Verdicts made the following ruling:

“Circumcision is compulsory upon men, and it is a noble quality in the case of women. But if one delays in informing someone who wishes to enter Islam about circumcision, waiting for Islam to become stable in his heart, then that is well, especially if he fears that by informing him about circumcision, he will be drawn away from Islam.”[2]

As for the one who calls others to Islam, he should follow the guidance of the Prophet ﷺ, showing good manners and patience when dealing with others. The Prophet ﷺ said:

قَوْلُ اللَّهِ لَوْ أَنِّي بَيِّنَتُ الَّذِي رَجَعُوا وَأَيُّهَا الْجَهَّالُ أَخْفِفْ لَكَ مِنْ أَنْ يَكُونَ لَكَ حِمْرُ الأَمْوَامِ

By Allâh, for Allâh to guide through you one man is better for you than for you to own red camels.[3]

This book comprises of what one needs to know when entering the fold of Islam, as briefly outlined in Shaikh Muhammad bin Ibrahim’s above-mentioned saying. And guidance lies with Allâh Almighty.

[1] See Al-Muntaqa Min Fatawa Asb-Shaikh Al-Fauzan (2:256)
[3] Al-Bukhari and Muslim, in a Hadith narrated by Sahl bin Sa’d, may Allâh be pleased with him. The references for this Hadith have been mentioned in the introduction of the book.
Marriage: Its Fruits And Benefits
For The Short And Long Term
Dedication

To all fathers and mothers, sons and daughters, who want to follow the Sunnah of the Prophet ﷺ by lowering their gazes and guarding the purity of their private parts, so that they can become from those who will be displayed and honored on the Day of Judgement.

To all for whom we have dedicated this humble work, we hope that it finds ears that listen, hearts that are attentive, and minds that comprehend, so that Muslim families can be raised, families that are far from falling into the depths of ignominy.

Allâh’s Book, His Messenger’s Sunnah, and the books of the people of knowledge – from these sources I have drawn advice and guidance in regards to the topic of marriage, its fruits and benefits, both for the short and long term. It is a topic that requires special attention in these times of trial and tribulation, times wherein satellite dishes, television sets, the internet, and magazines pump poison into the minds of men and women in order to lead them astray.

Without a doubt, marriage – after Allâh’s help – is an impenetrable fortress, helping one to lower his gaze, to guard the purity of his private parts, to stay away from deviant practices, especially for one who has a sincere intention that is pure for Allâh. Whoever seeks success and happiness through marriage with the intention of pleasing Allâh, then Allâh guides him and opens for him the doors of sustenance, safety, and peace. ‘Umar bin Al-Khattab, may Allâh be pleased with him, said, “I am amazed at one who seeks richness, yet does not marry, for Allâh Almighty says:

كُلُّ نَفْسٍ ذَا صَيْرٍ ﺗَعْمَرُهُ ﻋَارِفًا ﻣِنْ ﻛَارِيِّهِ ﺗَعْمَرُهُ ﻋَارِفًا ﻣِنْ ﻛَارِيِّهِ

If they be poor, Allâh will enrich them out of His bounty.\[1\]

I ask Allâh Almighty to grant us sincerity in speech and deed, and understanding as well as firmness upon the right way, for indeed He has the power to answer our supplications. Success lies with Allâh Almighty and it is He Who guides to the straight path.

---

\[1\] (An-Nur 24:32)
Some Factors That Contribute To The Growth Of The Muslim Family

Islam Honors Women

After being disparaged, divested of rights, and downright oppressed in the Days of Ignorance, women found their dignity and honor in Islam. Here are some of the ways in which Islam honors women:

Women are the Counterparts of Men

1. Islam established this when the Prophet ﷺ said:

إِنَّ النِّسَاءَ مُساَكِنُ الرَّجُلٍ

Indeed women are only the counterparts of men.[1]

2. Just as Allâh Almighty gave the wife duties, He also gave her rights in what is reasonable:

وَفَضَّلَ مِنْ لِبَابٍ عَلَىٰ لَبَابٍ

And they (women) have rights (over their husbands as regards living expenses, etc.) similar (to those of their husbands) over them (as regards to obedience and respect, etc.) to what is reasonable.[2]

3. Indeed, Islam bestowed dignity and honor upon the mother, sister, wife, and female relative, giving to each her right.

The Muslim woman wears Hijab, covers herself, and is forbidden from imitating men

1. Indeed, Islam ordered believing women to cover themselves and to not show anything from their beauty.

2. The opinion that calls for women to cover their faces is supported by stronger proofs (than the opposing view’s proofs) and helps keep people further away from temptation; furthermore, it is an opinion that is more in line with the reasoning behind the legislation of Hijab, for those who have a sickness in their hearts, first set their gaze on the face of a woman.

[1] Abu Dawud
[2] (Al-Baqarab 2:228)
3. Islam has strictly forbidden women from imitating men, and men from imitating women.

**The Islamic Link Between Men and Women**

Marriage is the only Islamic way to building a Muslim family; to establish sexual ties outside of this realm is to perpetrate a great sin indeed, a sin that angers Allâh and His Messenger ﷺ. Islam has effective rulings that not only help prevent one from falling into this sin, but also help prevent one from falling into those matters that lead to it, for indeed, Islam forbids fornication and forbids all sayings or deeds that lead to it. Therefore being alone with a stranger (stranger here means being alone with someone who, Islamically, one is not permitted to be alone with) is forbidden; mixing with strangers from the opposite sex is not permitted, speaking (unnecessarily) to strangers from the opposite sex is not permitted, and for a woman to travel without a Mahram is forbidden. It is also forbidden for a fornicating woman to marry until she repents.
How Islam Wants A Woman To Be[1]

1) That she should be strong in her religion, and not swayed by deceptive appearances, appearances that cause weaker souls to stray, because she knows that this world is made up of short-lived pleasures.

2) That she be patient, pleased with Allâh’s Decrees for her, always invoking Allâh Almighty for well-being and forgiveness.

3) That she frequently and consistently remember Allâh, obeying Him, reciting His Book, and applying its precepts.

4) That she, along with her husband, raises and trains her children; that she becomes a comfort for her husband, and that she avoids falling into that which Allâh has forbidden.

5) That she be her husband’s ally, helping him and encouraging him in his work.

6) That she remains honorable and virtuous, looking only at her husband.

7) That she be educated and cultured; that she gains beneficial knowledge, which she applies and then spreads to her friends.

8) That she be truthful in her life: to her husband, to her self, and to her children.

9) That she be a sincere and true friend to others, cooperating with them in the promotion of truth and good.

The Wisdom Behind Marriage And Its Benefits

Islam Encourages Marriage

On many occasions and in different ways Islam encourages its adherents to marry. On one occasion we are told that marriage is from the ways of the Messengers and that those who follow their ways in this world will be resurrected with them in the Hereafter. For the Messengers are the leaders whom we must follow and be guided by – Allâh Almighty says:

وَلَقَدْ أَرْسَلْنَا رَسُولًا مِنْ قَبْلِكَ وَحَدَّثْنَا هُمْ أَرْوَاحَ وَذَرَىٰ

And indeed We sent Messengers before you, and made for them wives and offspring.\[^1\]

In a Hadith related by Abu Ayyub, may Allâh be pleased with him, the Messenger of Allâh said:

أَرْعَعُ مِنْ سَنَنِ الْمُرْسَلِينَ: الْحَبَاءُ، وَالْتَعْطُرُ، وَالسَّوَالُ، وَالْكَاحِلُ

Four are from the ways (Sunan) of the Messengers: Al-Haya’, to use fragrant oils, to use the Siwak, and to marry.\[^2\]

On another occasion, Allâh mentioned marriage in the sense of it being a blessing and favor:

وَإِنَّا نَجْعَلُ لَكُمْ مِنَ الْحَيْزَانِ أَرْوَاحًا وَجَعْلُ لَكُمْ مِنَ الرُّضَا مَبَينًا وَحَدِيدًا

And Allâh has made for you wives of your own kind, and has made for you, from your wives, sons and grandsons, and has bestowed on you good provision.\[^3\]

The Wisdom And Benefits Related To Marriage Are Many – Here Are Some Of Them

1. By marrying, one obeys the order of Allâh and His Messenger, and by obeying Allâh and His Messenger, one achieves mercy and success in this world and in the Hereafter.

\[^1\] (Ar-Ra’d 13:38)

\[^2\] At-Tirmithi and Ahmad

\[^3\] (An-Nabl 16:72)
2. Through marriage the Muslim population increases, and through that increase the Islamic nation strengthens. Hence it becomes feared and becomes self-sufficient - that is, if it uses its strength and harnesses it according to Islamic principles.

3. Through marriage the boasting of the Prophet ﷺ on the Day of Judgement is supported. He ﷺ said:

«ْتَرْوَجُواْ الْوُدْودَ الْوَلِيدَ فَإِنَّ فَضْلَكُمْ فِي الْأَمْرِ»

Marry the loving and fertile, for indeed I shall boast of you before the nations.[1]

4. Through marriage the links and ties between Muslims become stronger, for just as there is relationship through blood there is relationship through marriage:

«وَهُوَ الَّذِي خَلَقَ مِنَ السَّمَاءِ مَاءً فَخَلَقَ مِنْهُ نَفْخًا وَصَوْبًا وَكَانَ رَبُّكَ فَقِيرًا»

And it is He Who has created man from water, and has appointed for him kindred by blood, and kindred by marriage. And your Lord is Ever All-Powerful to do what He wills.[2]

5. Through marriage one achieves reward if one fulfills the rights of his wife and children, for instance, when he spends on them. The Prophet ﷺ said:

«إِنَّكَ لَنْ تَبْنَيَّ نَفْقَةً بِنَفْقِي بِهَا وَجَهَةَ الْحَلَفَةَ أَيْلَاءَ أَجْرِتَ عَلَيْهَا حَتَّى مَاتَ بَنِيٓ أَبَاكَ»

Indeed, whenever you spend on an expenditure, seeking by it Allâh’s Face, you will be rewarded for it – even for what you put in the mouth of your wife.[3]

6. Through marriage, human beings continue to be as a species, until Allâh ends the earth and those who are on it. The Qur’ân here refers to this wonderful wisdom:

«وَإِنَّ الَّذِينَ مِنْ أَصْبَحُوهُمْ أَزْوَاجًا وَمَاتُوهُمْ مُّدْمِرَمِينَ مُّدْمِرِيْنَ»

[1] Abu Dawud and An-Nasa’i
[2] (Al-Furqan 25:54)
[3] Agreed upon
And Alláh Almighty has made for you wives of your own kind, and has made for you, from your wives, sons and grandsons, and has bestowed on you good provision.\(^{[1]}\)

And that is Alláh’s Sunnah (way), for which you can find no replacement.

7. Through marriage, one’s lineage is preserved, for people are proud when they are ascribed to their fathers. The individual is honored by his parentage. In society, good dealings and cooperation are found to be most prevalent among relatives.

8. Through marriage, society is protected from decadence and decline, because married couples are able to fulfill their most natural desires, desires that they love to fulfill, whereas sexual relations outside of marriage leads not only to social ills, but also to dangerous physical ailments that are all too prevalent today.

9. The married couple finds inner peace that issues from the mutual love, mercy, and compassion between husband and wife. When a husband comes home from work and gathers with his family, he forgets the anxieties and toils of his day; similar is the case for the wife when she gathers with her partner in life. And indeed Alláh is Most Truthful, for in describing the relationship between man and wife, He says:

\[
\text{وَمِنَ أَنْبَاتِكُمْ أنْ خُلِّقَ لَكُمْ مِنَ أنْبَاتِكُمْ أَزْوَاجًا لِيَسْكُنُوا إِلَيْهَا وَمَعَهَا وَجَعَلَ بَينَتَمِيزُكُمْ مُوَّدَّةً وَرَحْمَةً إِنِّي بِذَٰلِكَ لَا إِلَٰهَ إِلَّآ ثُلُثٌ مَّعَ رَبِّكَ فَذَٰلِكَ رَحْمَةً بَعَدَ الْقَطَرَةُ} \]

And among His Signs is this, that He created for you wives from among yourselves, that you may find repose in them, and He has put between you affection and mercy. Verily, in that are indeed signs for a people who reflect.\(^{[2]}\)

\(^{[1]}\) (An-Nahl 16:72)

\(^{[2]}\) (Ar-Rum 30:21)
The Wisdom Behind A Man Being Allowed To Have More Than One Wife In Islam

When Islam legislated that a man could marry more than one wife, it was without doubt for a lofty wisdom, for the general welfare – for the needs of the individual and society. We limit our discussion, then, to the following:
1) The social benefits.
2) The individual benefits.
3) The natural wisdom.

The Social Benefits
1) With women outnumbering men, as is the case in many countries, divorced and single women are in great numbers.
2) Usually as a result of war or disaster, widows become abundant in society.
3) Where great numbers of women are not able to find husbands and where having multiple wives is forbidden, prostitution, fornication, and betrayal in marriage become widespread.

Benefits To The Individual
1) When a woman is not able to give birth – due to age or other cause – a man naturally desires to have offspring, and so having another wife is more honorable for the woman than to be divorced by her husband, who will wish to remarry in order to have children.
2) If a woman is afflicted with a chronic sickness or contagious or repelling disease that prevents her from having sexual relations with her husband, then while continuing to keep her under his care, the husband can marry another. And that is not only more honorable for the first wife, but more of a guarantee that they remain happy together.
3) When, because of the nature of his work, a man has to continually travel, sometimes remaining months away from home, he may find it difficult, or perhaps impossible, to take his wife and children with him. No doubt, in such a situation, a second marriage has benefits that are religious and social; but
moreover, benefits that prevent him from falling into dissolution and disgrace, which on a greater scale, can only have ill-effects on society.

4) With some men their sexual drive is so strong that one wife is not enough to satisfy their wants; therefore Islam legislated for such a man to marry another wife, so that he doesn’t have to fulfill his lusts in forbidden liaisons.

5) Some men have a strong and resolute desire to have many children, which helps realize the honor of the Prophet ﷺ – when his, the largest of nations, will be displayed before the nations on the Day of Judgement.

6) A woman naturally experiences menstruation and post-natal bleeding; some women are physically weak or are cold, not desiring sexual relations, so that days may pass without her husband being able to approach her. By having another wife, a man protects himself from sexual deviation, for that kind of deviation is a great trial and tribulation.

7) There may be other factors – such as a woman being aged, unsightly, or afflicted with a physical defect – factors that make her undesirable as a wife to her husband, unless he has another wife.

The Natural Wisdom Behind The Legislation Of Multiple Wives
In order to preserve its morals, a nation made up of a greater number of women than men must allow men to have multiple wives. This will prevent single women who are not able to find a husband from wandering in this world without a family, and sometimes from wandering into degeneracy. To benefit society, to protect the honor of women, to protect society from prostitution and moral degeneracy – for these benefits, and more, polygamy and the spreading of Islamic relationships are needed.
The Dangers Of Turning Away From Marriage: 
On The Individual And On Society

When young men and women turn away from marriage, which Allâh legislated, and when their guardian or society places obstacles in the way to prevent them from getting married, dangerous sicknesses will prevail, shaking the individual as well as the structure of society.

The Most Dangerous Of Those Sicknesses

1) The religious danger and the danger having to do with the Hereafter: The one who is submerged in fulfilling his lust and desires in a non-lawful manner becomes afflicted with total aversion to the religion; thus he becomes miserable both in this life and the next.

2) The health danger: When members of a society turn away from marriage, venereal diseases become rampant.

3) The psychological and mental danger: Sexual deviation that results from not marrying leads to many kinds of mental disorders.

4) The social danger: Many dangers associated with dissolution and moral degeneracy become realities; moreover, families become destroyed, children are born to single mothers, misery becomes widespread, and family becomes no more.

5) The economic danger: One who feels no responsibility to his wife and children squanders his wealth and is unproductive in his work.
Why Young Men And Women Turn Away From Marriage

There are economic as well as social factors, which by themselves or combined together, prevent the spread of marriage in society, marriage being the ship of virtue, purity, psychological, as well as physical well-being. We must all strive to remove any factor that stands in the way of marriage – in the way of a healthy society comprised of healthy individuals.

The Most Important Of Those Factors

1) Steep dowries (Mahr) and competing in who can pay the highest dowry and in who receives the highest dowry. Many people, shifting their gazes on this financial aspect, neglect other more important things to look for in a husband or wife - such as piety and manners. The guardians of young girls end up asking not about a man’s piety, but about his wealth and properties, a morbid situation that the Prophet ﷺ warned us about when he said:

\[
\text{إِذَا أَنَاَّكُمْ مِنَ الْمَرْضُوٓنَ دِينَهُ وَحَلَّةٌ فَرَوْجَهُمْ إِلاَّ نَعْلَمُونَ فِي الأَرْضَ وَفِئَادَ عَرْضَ
\]

If you are pleased with the religion and character of one who comes to you (seeking marriage), then marry him (to the female of whom you are guardian), for if you do not do so, then there will be trials and vast corruption in the land.[1]

2) The great costs associated with the marriage ceremony and banquet is in reality a second dowry that is given to the wife. Extravagant marriages, though spurned on by customs and traditions, have no basis in Islam. How much wealth is spent on the banquet hall? On extravagant gifts, which are now given from the day the marriage is agreed upon (engagement) to the day of the actual marriage? On the many parties? On food and gifts for relatives? Before even considering such expenditures, a groom must have many misgivings as he is making all of the calculations.

[1] Recorded by At-Tirmithi and Ibn Majah
3) Studying barrier – an excuse for not getting married by members of both sexes, when in reality, marriage helps one in his studies.

4) Many are too shy to breach the topic of marriage to one’s parents or guardians.

5) Profanity and lewdness are so rampant in certain societies, that the young man or woman satisfies his or her lusts and desires outside of lawful marriage.

6) Widespread unemployment, low wages, high costs of living, and the claim that one is saving to guarantee a decent standard of living – these are some factors that prevent one from marrying.

7) Sometimes it is not wise to allow women to interfere, for it is often the case that a mother prevents her son or daughter from marrying, either because of her foolish demands or because of her prying into affairs that are outside of the realm of her business. Such actions on her part may make getting married become a difficult affair indeed for her son (or daughter).

8) Some people are so weak in their religious beliefs that marriage doesn’t even cross their mind; rather, they are satisfied with the life of sin and lust that they lead, which is especially the case in these times of ours, when the doors of evil are left wide open. Young men travel specifically to those countries that are known for lewdness so that they can fulfill their wicked desires – and we ask Allâh for safety and well-being.

9) Poverty – Allâh Almighty says:

\[
\text{And marry those among you who are single and (also marry) the righteous of your (male) slaves and female slaves. If they be poor, Allâh will enrich them out of His bounty. And Allâh is All-Sufficient for His creatures needs, All-Knowing (about the state of the people).}\text{[1]}
\]

In this verse, Allâh orders guardians to marry off those under their care – men who have no wives and women who have no husbands,

for sustenance and provision are in Allâh’s Hand, and He has guaranteed to enrich them if they choose the path to virtue, purity, and modesty. Furthermore, this verse refutes those guardians who don’t marry off their sons, making the excuse that their sons are poor and marriage will only serve to increase them in poverty.

The purely materialistic point of view, which results from weak reliance upon Allâh, is further refuted by reality, for how many poor men have achieved blessings and peace after marriage. The Prophet ﷺ said:

«لا اله الا بالله عليكم النعيم»
It is a right upon Allâh to help three...

among them he  mentioned:

«لا تراكم، ولا انعفاف»

The one who is getting married, seeking virtue thereby. [1]

Abu Bakr, may Allâh be pleased with him, said, “Obey what Allâh commanded you regarding marriage, and He will execute what he promised you in terms of richness.”

Ibn ‘Abbas, may Allâh be pleased them, said, “Allâh encouraged you to get married and promised you richness for it, for He said:

«إني بكرمو فقرتني فرحتمي به من فضل الله»

If they be poor, Allâh will enrich them out of His bounty.” [2]

---

[1] At-Tirmithi, An-Nasa’i, Ibn Majah, and Ahmad
Guidance And Advice

To My Brother Guardian And My Muslim Sister

It is obligatory upon you both to choose a righteous husband, one who has religion and good manners, and you must not take into consideration wealth and status, for indeed the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said:

إذا أناكم من ترضون دينه وخلقته فروجوا إن أم تنفعا تكن دينه في الأرض وفساد عرضا

If one comes to you and you are pleased with his religion and character, then marry him (to the one under your care), for if you do not do so, there will be trial and vast corruption in the land.\[1\]

To My Brother Guardian, Here Are Two Important Matters

1) You must not coerce an adult female to marry someone she is not pleased with, for Islam forbade you from doing so.

2) If a truthful and sincere man comes to you seeking marriage, and if you are pleased with his religion, then you must not prevent him from seeing the girl he wishes to marry; however, do not allow them to be alone. It is Sunnah in Islam for one to look at the person one wishes to marry. Al-Mughirah bin Shu'bah, may Allāh be pleased with him, asked to marry a woman and the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said:

نظر إليها فإن بها أخرى أن يوهد يبتسم

Look at her, for that is more likely to keep you remaining with one another.\[2\]

Meaning, it will cause agreement between you.

My Brother Guardian

Beware of asking for a high dowry, for that is a reprehensible act of greed; if it is known how much you ask for (even though the dowry is not for you, and is for the female under your care), then many

\[1\] At-Tirmithi and Ibn Majah

\[2\] Recorded by At-Tirmithi, An-Nasa’i, and others
eligible men may be prevented from asking to be married to your
daughter or your sister...and because of that, you will have greatly
wronged her by having prevented her from marriage, which is the
right and hope of every young woman.

Every marriage that takes place based on a small dowry and small
expenditure is blessed, for Allâh blesses the marriage and causes
harmony between the husband and wife. Allâh does not bless the
marriage that is extravagant – extravagant in the dowry or in the
expenditures related to the marriage – nor the marriage that begins
with music or other forbidden amusements (during the marriage
parties and banquets); in fact, as happens so frequently, such a
marriage leads to failure. May Allâh Almighty protect us all from the
slippery paths of wrongdoing.
Advice That Should Be Read

From The Manners Of The First Night

The husband should try to make the wife feel as comfortable as possible, for instance, by talking to her nicely and proffering her a glass of juice or water.

Then he should hold her forelocks and say:

\[
\text{Allâhumma Innee As’aluka min Khairibâ wa Khairi Ma Jubilat ‘Alaibi wa A’ootbu Bika Min Sharriha wa Sharri Ma Jubilat ‘Alaibi.}
\]

O Allah, I ask You for the goodness within her and the goodness that you have made her inclined towards, and I take refuge with You from the evil within her and the evil that you have made her inclined towards.[1]

It is then recommended for them to pray two units of prayer together.

He should also say the following when he approaches her:

\[
\text{Allâhumma Jannibnasb-Shaitaana, wa Jannibisb-Shaitana Ma Razaqtaana.}
\]

In the Name of Allah. O Allah, keep the devil away from us and keep the devil away from what you have blessed us with,[2]

Also, it is not permissible for a man to miss prayer in the Masjid on the first day or on the first few days of marriage; rather, he is no exception and must therefore perform all of his prayers in the Masjid.

[1] Recorded by Abu Dawud and Ibn Majah
[2] Agreed upon
Certain Marital Rights

In the realm of human cooperation, Islam has legislated many partnerships, through which efforts and wealth are gathered and the welfare of all is sought. Islam has legislated the partnership of marriage to build the beginnings of society – the family – and to help achieve success and happiness for children. Allah Almighty says:

وَاللَّهُ جَعَلَ لَكُمْ مِنْ أَخْلَاصِكُمْ أَزْوَاجًا وَجَعَلَ لَكُمْ مِنْ أَزْوَاجِكُمْ نِسَاءً

And Allah has made for you wives of your own kind, and has made for you, from your wives, sons and grandsons.[1]

In regards to this blessed partnership that Allah has legislated, it is the responsibility of both partners to fulfill the rights of the other; each should work sincerely and honestly towards that end, without neglecting one’s share of duties and responsibilities.

Some Of The Rights A Husband Has Over His Wife

1) She must obey him in all that is good and lawful, for the Messenger of Allah ﷺ said:

إِذَا صَلَّتُ الْمَرْأَةُ حَمْسَةَ وَصَامَتْ شَهْرَةَ وَحَفَظَتْ فُرْجَهَا وَأَطَاعَتْ رُوَّجَجَهَا فَلَيْنَ أَذْهَلَ الْجَنَّةُ مِنْ أَيْ أَبْوَابِ الْجَنَّةِ شَيدَتْ

If a woman prays her five (prayers), fasts her month (i.e., Ramadhan), safeguards her private parts (from wrongdoing), and obeys her husband, it will be said to her: “Enter Paradise from any door of Paradise that you wish.”[2]

A woman’s obedience to her husband reaps benefits for both her own self and for her husband; however, she must not obey him if he orders her to sin, because there is no obedience to the creation in something that involves disobedience to Allah.

2) The wife must take care of her home, protect her husband’s wealth, and provide him with comfort and peace.

[1] (An-Nahl 16:72)
[2] Recorded by Ahmad
3) She must take his feelings into consideration, not hurting him with her tongue, deeds, or manners.

4) She is forbidden from leaving the house without his permission, and she has no right to bring anyone into the home without her husband’s permission and satisfaction.

Some Of The Rights A Woman Has Over Her Husband

1) He must spend on her in a fair and good way according to the norms of society; he should not then be neglectful in providing her food, drink, and clothing. Furthermore, he must guide her in learning what she needs to know from Islam and from worldly matters.

2) He must be vigilant in protecting her from doubtful matters; hence he doesn’t allow her to beautify herself for others, nor does he allow her to mix with strange men.

3) He must have good manners with her, speaking to her gently and looking past trifling matters. He should advice her in a gentle way, showing compassion and mercy.

4) He should be patient when she displeases him or when she shows bad manners, and he should try his best to rectify her, not resorting to divorce except as an extreme necessity. The Prophet ﷺ said:

«لا يُفْرِكِّ نَاقُولٌ مَوْلُوَّدَةَ إِنْ كَرَّهَهَا حَلَّافًا رَضِيَّا بِنَثَّيْهَا أُخْرَى»

Let not a believing man despise a believing woman, if he dislikes a trait in her, he will be pleased with another.[1]

5) To my sensible sister in Islam: Know – and may Allâh guide us both to that which is good – that stubbornness and persistence in opposing the husband is from the greatest causes of a miserable life and of separation. You must obey him in that which is good and lawful. And remember: obedience to him, abstaining from disagreement with him, gentleness in your dealings with him – these are from the greatest causes of harmony and happiness.

Important Note

To my prudent and sensible brother: Divorce has many detrimental

[1] Muslim and Ahmad
effects, so trifling matters or matters that can be rectified or cured—such as a temporary discontentment with your spouse, lust for someone else, greed for money or status—should not be the cause of divorce. And each person will suffer the consequences of his own deeds.

When Islam placed divorce in the hands of the man, it did allow him to wield that prerogative in an evil way; there are boundaries: if one observes them, the divorce is permissible; if not, then one is sinning.

**Here Are Those Limits And Boundaries**

1) There is a reason that calls for the divorce, such as the wife having a bad character. If the man initiates the divorce without cause, he is sinning, yet the divorce he effectuated is valid and binding in the *Shari'ah*.

2) The husband must initiate the divorce after a menstrual period and before he engages in sexual intercourse with her (during that period of purity). If he divorces her while she is menstruating, then he is sinning and his divorce is contrary to what is legislated; similar is the case when he divorces her after she is purified from the menstruation and after he has engaged in sexual intercourse with her, because he does not know if she is pregnant or not.

3) When divorcing her, he must not do so more than once; if he divorces her after she is purified from her menstrual period and without having intercourse with her during that period of purity, then the divorce is valid, and there is no sin upon him because his action is in accordance with the *Shari'ah*. But if he divorces her three times in one phrase or in many different phrases, then his divorce is contrary to what is legislated, and he must seek a legal ruling from a *Fatwa* council if he wishes to take back the wife he divorced.
Finally, A Call To Early Marriage

The importance of marriage and its effects on protecting young men and women from fornication and sexual deviation is a matter that is well known to people of knowledge, wisdom, and foresight. The Prophet ﷺ said:

وَأَمَّلِلَّ ذَٰلِكَ لِلرَّحْمَةِ رَبِّكُم مِّنْ أَحْسَنِ الْمَعَامَاتِ وَالصَّلَاةِ فَلْيُبْنِىَ عَلَيْهِ أَحْسَنُ بُلُوْجٍ وَأَغْسِلْ بُلُوْجًا وَأَجْعَلْ فُطُورًا بِمَعْلُولٍ فَإِذَا لَمْ يَكُنْ فَأَخْفَفْهُ وَجَعَلْهُ مُحْتَذٍ

O group of youth: Whoever from you is able to pay the dowry, then let him marry, for that will better help you protect your private parts (from evil) and will better help you lower your gazes. And whoever is not able (to pay the dowry), then upon him is fasting, for it decreases his sexual drive.\[1\]

Indeed a noble cause it is for scholars, parents, writers, and those who are respected in society to work together, finding practical ways to help realize early marriage for individuals in our Muslim societies, a cause that can be furthered by mutual counsel, cooperation, and theoretical as well as practical studies. Such efforts will – if Allâh wills – benefit society and protect it from the evil effects of late marriage.

---

\[1\] Agreed upon
Certain Rulings Related To Menstruation
And Postnatal Bleeding

Menstruation
In accordance with woman’s nature and without any other cause, menstruation is the blood that discharges from women at known intervals or times.

The Age Of Menstruation
There is no set age for when menstruation begins. Whenever an amount of blood discharges at any time, one must refer to that occurrence as menstruation. Therefore whenever a woman sees the blood of menstruation, she is menstruating, regardless of whether she is older or younger than nine years, and regardless of whether she is older than fifty years, because the Shari’ah established the rulings of menstruation based upon the presence of that blood.

The Period Of Menstruation
As it is natural blood, it differs according to the situation of the female, her environment, and the climate she lives in. Because of the clear difference between women, there is no lower or upper limit as to the number of days for menstruation. What is important is whether there is blood or not, because based on whether there is blood or not the Shari’ah established rulings. Nonetheless, six or seven days are most prevalent among women, though this number may increase or decrease, as we have already stated. Regarding the period of purity that separates between two menstrual periods, again, there is no limit in terms of number of days.

The Normal Period
When a woman experiences her first menstruation, she waits until she is purified, and the number of days that she was in her period becomes what is known as her “normal period.” There is no harm, however, for the woman who is just beginning to menstruate to test for three months in a row to establish how many days her normal period are. If the number is stable, then that is her normal period. But if, in one of the later tests, her menstruation is cut short of the normal period or prolongs longer than the normal period, she is still
considered to be menstruating, and she takes no heed of her previous normal period; rather, she has a new normal period. What is important is that the rulings of menstruation are related to the presence of menstrual blood.

**Al-Istibadhab**

The flow of blood outside of the regular time period, blood that is caused by sickness or blood that is rotten and is coming out of a vein. The *Mustabadhab* woman is one who sees blood that is neither menstrual blood nor the blood that comes out after giving birth. There are three situations for the *Mustabadhab*:

1) She knows her normal period before the sickness of Istibadhab. Because she knows the time-span and days of her period from every month, she depends on her normal period to know how many days she was menstruating. After that, she is considered to be *Mustabadhab* for all additional days.

2) She is a beginner, meaning that she has no normal period or she has forgotten the number of days for her normal period, yet she is able to distinguish between menstrual blood and *Istibadhab* blood – because of thickness and thinness of blood, color, or smell. Thick, dark, and a bad odor – these all take the ruling of menstruation; otherwise the blood is that of *Istibadhab*.

3) She has a normal period but is not able to distinguish between the two kinds of blood. She calculates that, for instance, her period is normally six or seven day, and so those days take the ruling of menstruation, while the rest of the days are that of *Istibadhab*.

**An-N fas (Postnatal Bleeding)**

Blood that comes out of the womb while giving birth or during its early stages, blood that comes with pain and for the most part, continues to flow for forty days. The days before the delivery or the days in which signs of delivery were noticed are not considered.

**The Period For N fas**: For the most part, forty days, yet there is no lower limit.
The Purity Of The Menstruation Woman And The Woman Experiencing Postnatal Bleeding

When a menstruating woman sees that she is purified and when the woman experiencing postnatal bleeding sees that the flow of blood has ceased, she must perform Ghusl to purify her body. The minimum requirement for this Ghusl is for water to reach every area of the body, including what is below the hair. But it is best and more complete to perform this Ghusl in the manner that is described in a Hadith related by Muslim.\(^{[1]}\) When performing this Ghusl, a woman does not have to undo her braids unless they are tightly and very compactly tied and it is feared that water will not reach the roots.

The Purity Of The Mustahadhah

The Mustahadhah need not perform Ghusl but she must perform ablution (Wudhu') for every prayer. When she performs ablution, she must first wash the bloodstains and tie something around the area from which the blood is flowing, so as to prevent the blood from spilling.

\(^{[1]}\) Sahih Muslim (1:179)
Important Points

Five Obligatory Things Related to Menstruation
1) *Ghusl* or *Tayammum* if one is unable to use water or find it.
2) The woman who menstruates and has just been divorced must wait for three menstrual cycles to pass for marriage.
3) Islamically, when a woman first menstruates, she becomes an adult.
4) When one has had sex with his wife while she was menstruating, his atonement is to give a Dinar or half a Dinar in charity.
5) When a woman has waited for three menstrual cycles, it becomes established that the man who divorced her is not the father for any future pregnancy.

During A Menstrual Cycle, Ten Things Are Forbidden
1) Sexual intercourse.
2) Prayer.
3) Divorce.
4) Reciting the Qur’ân,[1] unless the menstruating woman fears that she will forget or unless she is forced to recite, for instance because she is a teacher or student during periods of examination.
5) Touching the Qur’ân – based on what has preceded.
6) Making *Tawaf* around the Ka’bah.
7) Staying in the *Masjid*.
8) Passing through the *Masjid* if she fears that some blood may spoil it.
9) Fasting.

---

[1] The second opinion in this issue is that a menstruating woman may recite, but not touch the Qur’ân – although she can hold it from behind a barrier. The sexually impure is categorically forbidden from reciting the Qur’ân until he is purified from the greater state of purity, and that is because the period of his impurity is short, as opposed to the menstruating woman. This opinion is held by the noble and eminent Shaikh ‘Abdul-‘Aziz bin Baz, may Allâh have mercy on him.
10) Counting (for the divorced woman) by the months because a woman counts by her menstrual cycle only.

If the menstruating woman or the one experiencing postnatal bleeding becomes purified during the time of a prayer, she must hurry to perform Ghusl, so that she can perform that prayer on time. If she cannot perform Ghusl because of travelling or because she couldn’t find water, she may perform Tayammum, and then, when she is able, she can perform Ghusl. Some women fall into great error when they delay performing Ghusl, making the excuse of not being able to take the complete Ghusl. Rather, she must perform Ghusl, even if she performs only the obligatory elements of the Ghusl, so that she can pray on time. Then if there is more time later, she can perform the complete Ghusl.

If there is yellowness or cloudiness in the blood during the normal period time, then it is menstruation.

If menstruating blood stops but then starts again during her normal period days, then it is menstruation for sure.
Conclusion: A Call To Guiding
People To The Truth

Every Muslim bears the responsibility of conveying the message of Islam to the people and every Muslim must be sincerely desirous of doing so. The Muslim should not distinguish between people, wishing to call to Islam only a certain race or only people of a certain color, or only people from a certain region. Allâh says:

Invite to the way of your Lord with wisdom and fair preaching, and argue with them in a way that is better[1]

“Wisdom” is the clear proof to the truth that wipes out all doubt. “Fair preaching” refers to beneficial admonition and convincing speech. The former (wisdom) is for the elite of the people and the latter (fair preaching) is for the general population. If there is a need to argue with others, the caller to truth does so with gentleness and compassion in order to calm their disquiet. When Allâh Almighty sent Musa and Harun, peace be upon them, to Fir'awn, He said:

“And speak to him mildly, perhaps he may accept admonition or fear Allâh.”[2]

Allâh Almighty says:

Say: “This is my way; I invite unto Allâh with sure knowledge, I and whosoever follows me (also must invite others to Allâh) with sure knowledge.”[3]

Allâh ordered the Prophet ﷺ to inform people that calling to Allâh is based on knowledge and surety and proof – that is the Prophet’s way

[2] (Ta Ha 20:44)
and the way of those who follow him.

The Prophet ﷺ indeed expended all of his energies in guiding the people, and he was very sad when they turned away from the truth that he ﷺ came with – Allâh says:

"قد تُذْهَبُ مَنْ شَاءَ ۖ ثُمَّ كَالْأُوْهُمُ إِنَّهُمْ لَا يَوْمَآءُوا بِهِۦ ۖ وَهُدِّيَتْ أَسْمَاَٰءَ"

Perhaps, you, would kill yourself in grief, over their footsteps (for their turning away from you), because they believe not in their narration (the Qur’ân).[1]

And Allâh Almighty says:

"لَمَّا يُذْهَبُ مَنْ شَاءَ ۖ لَا يَكُونَ عَلَيْهِ مُؤَذِّٰنَ"

It may be that you are going to kill yourself with grief, that they do not become believers.[2]

Here Allâh consoles him and orders him not to allow for himself to perish because of his grief over them.

The Prophet ﷺ said to ‘Ali bin Abi Talib, may Allâh be pleased with him:

"فَلَكَنَّ يَهُدِيَ اللَّهُ ۛ يَا زَحْلَا وَاِجْدَدْ إِنِّي نَحْنُ عَلَيْهِ نَعْمَ"

For Allâh to guide one man through you is better for you than red camels.[3]

Abu Hurairah, may Allâh be pleased with him, related that the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said:

"فِي مَّنْ دَعَا إِلَى هَدِيَّتِهِ كَانَ لَهُ مِنَ الأَخْرَى مِثْلُ أَخْوَيْهِ مِنَ الْإِنْثَى ۚ لَا يَقْضُ ۗ ذَٰلِكَ مِنْ أَخْوَيْهِ مَثِلُ ۗ وَمِنْ ذَٰلِكَ دَعَا إِلَى سُلَّامَةَ كَانَ عَلَيْهِ مِنَ الْإِنْثَى ۚ مِثْلُ آنَآمُ مِنَ الْإِنْثَى ۚ لَا يَقْضُ ۗ ذَٰلِكَ مِنْ آنَآمِهِمْ مَثِلُ ۚ"

Whoever calls to guidance, he will have rewards similar to the rewards of those who follow him, without them being decreased in their rewards in the very least. And whoever

---

[1] (Kahf 18:6)
[2] (Asb-Shu’ara’ 26:3)
calls to misguidance, then upon him is the sin similar to the sins of those who follow him, without their sins being decreased in the very least.\textsuperscript{[1]}